INFORMATION TO USERS

The negative microfilm copy of this dissertation was prepared and inspected by the school granting the degree. We are using this film without further inspection or change. If there are any questions about the content, please write directly to the school. The quality of this reproduction is heavily dependent upon the quality of the original material.

The following explanation of techniques is provided to help clarify notations which may appear on this reproduction.

1. Manuscripts may not always be complete. When it is not possible to obtain missing pages, a note appears to indicate this.

2. When copyrighted materials are removed from the manuscript, a note appears to indicate this.

3. Oversize materials (maps, drawings, and charts) are photographed by sectioning the original, beginning at the upper left hand corner and continuing from left to right in equal sections with small overlaps.

4. Most photographs reproduce acceptably on positive microfilm or microfiche but lack clarity on xerographic copies made from the microfilm. For any illustrations that cannot be reproduced satisfactorily by xerography, photographic prints can be purchased at additional cost and tipped into your xerographic copy. Requests can be made to the Dissertations Customer Services Department.

U-MI Dissertation Information Service
University Microfilms International
A Bell & Howell Information Company
300 N. Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106
A study of the Abhidharmahrdaya: The historical development of the concept of karma in the Sarvāstivāda thought

Ryose, Wataru S., Ph.D.

The University of Wisconsin - Madison, 1987

Copyright ©1987 by Ryose, Wataru S. All rights reserved.
A dissertation entitled

A STUDY OF THE ABHIDHARMARADAYA: THE HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT
OF THE CONCEPT OF KARMA IN THE SARVASTIVADA THOUGHT

submitted to the Graduate School of the
University of Wisconsin-Madison in partial fulfillment of
the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

by

Wataru S. Ryose

Degree to be awarded: December 19 May 19 August 1987

Approved by Dissertation Readers:

[Signatures and dates]

7/15/1987
Date of Examination

Robert M. Poole
Dean, Graduate School
A STUDY OF THE ABHIDHARMAHṛDĀYA: THE HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE CONCEPT OF KARMA IN THE SARVĀSTIVĀDA THOUGHT

by

Wataru S. Ryōse

A thesis submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirement for the degree of

Doctor of Philosophy
(Buddhist Studies)

at the
UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN-MADISON
1987
# Table of Contents

**Introduction**  
- Part One -  

Chapter I: The Origin and the Abhidharma works of the Sarvāstivāda School  

Chapter II: The position of the Abhidharmahṛdaya  
A. The Abhidharmahṛdaya: Its Author  
B. Text; Translations & Commentaries  
C. Structure of the Abhidharmahṛdaya  

Chapter III: Karma: Its Concept & Development in the Sarvāstivāda School  
1. Karma & Its Various Aspects  
   A. The Term 'Karma'  
   B. Body-action, Speech-action and Mind-action  
   C. Manifested action and Unmanifested action  
2. Karma & the Concept of Dependent Co-arising  
   A. Karma and Its Causal Relationship  
   B. Various Divisions of Action  
3. Karma as a Buddhist Ethical Concept  
   A. Wholesome, Unwholesome and Indeterminate  
   B. The Morally Potent Element: Samvara and Asamvara  
   C. Ten Courses of Action (Karmapatha)  
4. Conclusion
- Part Two -

An English Translation of *Karma-varga*

Preface to the Translation

A. An Interpretative Survey of the Karma Section in the *Abhidharmahrdaya* 102 - 105
B. Remarks on the Present Translation 106 - 108
C. Table of the Contents 109 - 111

An English Translation of *Karma-varga* 113 - 358

Bibliography 359 - 371

Appendix 372 - 449
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I have learned so much from so many people while doing this study that I cannot mention all of them. My special thanks are due to Professor Minoru Kiyota, my advisor at the University of Wisconsin-Madison, who has encouraged me throughout my graduate studies and dissertational research. Thanks are also due to Dr. Genjun M. Sasaki of Otani University, Kyoto, Japan, who first guided me toward an appreciation for the intricacies of Buddhist doctrine; to Professor Francis Wilson of University of Wisconsin-Madison, who by her teaching showed me the beauty of Sanskrit; to Professor Robert Miller who revealed to me a new perspective of Buddhism; to Dr. Paul Griffiths of Notre Dame University, who, as a scholar and friend, shared with me his extensive knowledge; to Rev. Gyoko Saito of Higashi Honganji Temple, Los Angeles, for his personal support during the course of my graduate studies; and finally to all my friends in both Japan and America without whom this study could not have been completed. I must mention one of them: Amy Wasserstrom who carefully read the first draft and gave me useful suggestions.
### ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AH</td>
<td>Abhidharmahṛdaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHS</td>
<td>Abhidharmahṛdayasūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AK</td>
<td>Abhidharmakośabhāṣya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AKV</td>
<td>Abhidharmakośavyākhyā (Sphūṭārthā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AN</td>
<td>Aṅguttaranikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DN</td>
<td>Dīghanikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP</td>
<td>Jñānaprasthāna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kokuyaku</td>
<td>Kokuyaku issaikyō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAS</td>
<td>Miśrakabhidharmahṛdayaśāstra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MN</td>
<td>Majjhimanikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVS</td>
<td>Mahāvibhāṣā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN</td>
<td>Samyuttanikāya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taisho</td>
<td>Taishō shinshū daizōkyō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

Buddhism has developed the concept of karma throughout its history. The following verses in the Suttanipāta, one of the oldest Buddhist texts, express the meaning of karma.

"The world is realized by [human] action (kamma). Human beings are recognized by [their] actions. All sentient beings are bound to actions, just as a linchpin of a quickly moving chariot...

Thus the wise should truly know this action. If they recognize the concept of dependent co-arising, then they will truly know action and its effect."¹

Thus, the Buddha understood karma as human action and strongly emphasized it in his teaching. The Buddha himself was, therefore, referred to as 'kammavāda' (the holder of the view of karma), or 'kiriya-vāda' (the promulgator of the consequence of karma).²

However, the theoretical foundations and soteriological aims of the Buddhist concept of karma are not yet clearly understood, despite the large number of works available on this subject. There are, of course, some exceptions: James P. McDermott's Development in the Early Buddhist Concept of Kamma/Karma (New Delhi: Munshiram

---

¹ Suttanipāta, 654; 655.
² DN, I, p.115.
Manoharlal, 1984) deals with the concept of karma as it developed in Buddhist scriptures, particularly in the Vinaya and Sutta Piṭaka. There are also a number of specialized studies which cover that concept as understood not only in Buddhism but also in other Indian philosophies and religions.³ But there are few comprehensive works which attempt to examine the theoretical foundations of karma within the history of Indian Buddhist philosophy.

Indian Buddhist texts, particular Abhidharmic texts, are important here. Let me briefly describe the circumstances which contributed to the compilation of these texts. Several centuries after the death of the Buddha, Buddhist communities split into a number of distinct schools. These schools attempted to explain the Buddha's teachings in various manners and established their own methods to clarify the Buddha's teachings. Their differing philosophical views resulted in the production of the Abhidharma. These texts are the repository of all Buddhist teachings of that time and provide the theoretical foundation for all Buddhist doctrine. Among those Abhidharmic schools, the Sarvāstivāda-Vaibhāṣika school was the most influential and prolific in

³See, for example, Wendy D. O'Flaherty (ed), Karma and Rebirth in Classical Indian Tradition, (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1980); Ronald W. Neufeldt (ed), Karma and Rebirth--Post Classical Developments, (Albany: State University of New York Press, 1986) and so on.
India. In their works, originally written in Sanskrit, the concept of karma was first philosophically systematized and given a primary concern. The understanding of karma in the Sarvāstivāda in turn became normative not only for Buddhism in India but also for it in other countries. This is attested by the fact that the Abhidharmakośa, one of the Sarvāstivādins' texts, has been studied as a basic text for Buddhist scholars and students in Tibet, China and Japan. The theoretical foundations developed in this school, therefore, provides us with a proper understanding of the significance of karma in the entire range of Buddhist thought.

Thus, this study is intended to treat the concept of karma specifically within the history of Sarvāstivāda thought. To this aim we shall concentrate on the Abhidharmahṛdaya of Dharmaśrī, because this text was the first work that attempted to systematize all doctrine of this school. Its doctrinal analysis provides us with a neat summary of previous Abhidharma studies, and its organizational structure became a model for later Sarvāstivāda texts.

Analytical works on Abhidharma texts have been done by western as well as Japanese scholars. These studies,
however, mainly focused on the Abhidharma-kosa of Vasubandhu. This text, though important, actually does not represent the philosophy of the Sarvastivada school, rather that of the Sautrantika, a subdivision of the Sarvastivada. Few systematic works on other important texts including the Abhidharma-maharaja have been done. Moreover, there are few comprehensive works which examine the concept of karma within the history of the Sarvastivada school.

This study consists of an expository essay on and an annotated translation of the third chapter, the Karma-varga, of the Abhidharma-maharaja; that chapter deals with the concept of karma systematically. First, I will treat karma's three major functions in Buddhism: (1) karma as that which shapes the mode of human existence; (2) karma as a description of human action from the perspective of the Buddhist concept of dependent co-arising (pratityasamutpada), that is, the relationship between the human action and its effect, and (3) karma as a principle of Buddhist ethics, that is, a means of controlling the members of the Buddhist community,

---------------------
particularly monks.

Second, an annotated translation of the third chapter of the Abhidharmahṛdaya is attached to this study as a textual reference. Though the Abhidharmahṛdaya has been translated into western languages,⁵ these works have not attempted to interpret and contextualize the central theme of that text within the history of Sarvāstivāda school. This study attempts to make a small contribution by examining the philosophy of that text in a specific area: the evolution of the concept of karma. This text has two direct commentaries: the Abhidharmahṛdayasūtra and the Miśrakābhidharmahṛdayaśāstra. I will also examine these two works in order to further explore the doctrinal development of the concept of karma in this school.

PART ONE
CHAPTER ONE

THE ORIGIN AND THE ABHIDHARMA WORKS OF

THE SARVASTIVADA SCHOOL

Abhidharma forms the part of the Buddhist tripiṭaka (that is, the three bodies of teaching of the Buddha) which deals with philosophy in a detailed way.

Early Buddhist philosophy of the Nikāya and Āgama is usually regarded as doctrine directly related to practice; practice indicates meditation and meditation is the most fundamental means to reach nirvāṇa. With the appearance of various Hinayāna schools and the subsequent composition of Abhidharma literature, Buddhist theoretical thinking became more analytical. In this literature, such notions as elements, power and faculties, cosmology, Karma, passion (kleśa), a system for attaining knowledge, meditative training, and so on, were explored. Its systematization was one of the greatest achievements in the history of Buddhist philosophy.¹

Vasubandhu, the 5th century Abhidharma master, in his Abhidharmakośa (hereafter abbreviated as AK), one of the

most famous Abhidharma compositions, describes the essence of the Abhidharma in the following manner: "The Abhidharma is pure wisdom (prajñā) with its accompanying elements. Wisdom is the discernment of dharma."  

Wisdom, the object of speculation in the Abhidharma, is then expounded as analytical, systematic understanding of all dharmas. Buddhaghosa, the 5th century Theravāda master, explains it in this way; "The Abhidharma is the instruction in the absolute nature of things."  

Many Hīnayāna schools later produced Abhidharma compositions in order to represent their theoretical understanding of all dharmas. They also attempted to classify their own doctrinal positions. Among these Abhidharmic schools, the Sarvāstivāda school was the most influential in India.

The Sarvāstivāda school, as the name indicates (sarva asti: everything exists), established a realistic philosophy which had a great impact on the development of Mahāyāna Buddhism. This highly developed doctrine is found in various extant works.

The rise and development of various Buddhist schools or sects, however, is shrouded by mystery due to lack of historical evidence. The Sarvāstivāda school is no

---

2Abhidharmakośa, I, 2A.

3Atthasālinī, III, 488.
exception. In spite of this, there have been scholars such as A. Barea, E. Conze and N. Dutt who have made progress in clarifying the history of the Sarvāstivāda school. I will make no attempt here to completely review their works, but instead will refer to the sources available which shed light on this school's development.

The Sarvāstivāda was active in the extreme north-west region of India, especially Gandhara and Kashmir. According to traditional accounts, King Aśoka sent Buddhist missionaries to various regions of India and Ceylon. As a result, many Buddhist monastic communities were established in disparate areas. Considering this fact, we can suggest that the origin of the Buddhist schools occurred on the basis of simple geographical separation. It is certainly sufficient here to give a few examples of early Buddhist schools named after geographical regions, such as Mahīśāsaka and Haimavata. In the same way, we can assume that the origin of the Sarvāstivāda also had to do with geographical isolation at the time of Aśoka; the Buddhist community in Gandhara and Kashmir later became the Sarvāstivāda school.

This has been the traditional, widely accepted view.\(^5\)

After the death of the Buddha, some differences arose in Buddhist monastic communities; tensions developed into doctrinal disputes around the time of King Aśoka. In the history of Buddhism, the first schism was that between the Mahāsaṃghika and the Sthavira. The former, the Mahāsaṃghika (meaning 'great groupists') were characterized as rather lax in their discipline, and the later, the Sthaviras (meaning 'elders') prided themselves on their seniority and orthodoxy. The Mahāsaṃghika developed as Mahāyāna Buddhism in the second period. The Sthavira became the Theravāda.\(^6\)

Each of these two groups experienced further subdivisions, ultimately resulting in the traditional eighteen or twenty Hīnayāna schools. One school, known as the Sarvāstivāda, split from the Sthavira. It established itself as an independent sect with a distinct philosophical view. The Sthavira, otherwise known as the Vibhajyavādin, became the Theravāda. Paul Griffiths evaluates the separation of these two schools in the following manner:

It is certainly true, in any case, that the separation


\(^6\)Conze, pp.31-38.
of the Sarvāstivāda from the school which later became the Theravāda was effective from the second century BC onwards. We know this because the Sütra and Vinaya literature of the two schools is substantially identical and must have been based on a common original, whereas the Abhidharma literature of the two schools has only identical parallels, and must therefore have developed independently, subsequent to the separation of the schools.7

The Sarvāstivāda, among other Hīnayāna schools, developed characteristic philosophical ideas in its Abhidharma literature. When we refer to the Abhidharma, we often refer to some version of the Sarvāstivāda Abhidharma, usually the Vaibhāṣika, if reference is specific. The Sarvāstivāda, like the Theravāda, has seven canonical Abhidharma texts. As Paul Griffiths mentions, the resemblance of the two bodies of literature, however, indicates only incidental parallels.8 The seven canonical Sarvāstivāda texts are:

I. Jñānaprasthāna
II. Prakaraṇapāda
III. Vijñānakāya
IV. Dharmaśāstra
V. Prajñaptiśāstra
VI. Dhātukāya
VII. Saṅgītiparyāya

7 Griffiths, p.206.
8 ibid.
The most important and developed of the seven texts is the Jñānaprasthāna (hereafter abbreviated as JP) which is traditionally regarded as the major text, of which the other texts are appendages or 'feet' (pāda). This text is traditionally attributed to Kātyāyanīputra, who composed the text in order to compile the Abhidharma believed to be the actual sayings of the Buddha.

It should be noted that the Sarvāstivādins attempted to guarantee the sacredness of their works, especially that of Abhidharma, by claiming the authority of the Buddha. On the other hand, the Sautrāntika school, which later split from the Sarvāstivāda, denied the canonical authority of the major Abhidharma works. The Sautrāntika, as the name indicates (meaning; 'Sūtra, the best'), admitted the canonical authority only to the Sūtras.

It is extremely difficult to fix a date for any of these texts at the present time. About the chronology of these texts, Junjiro Takakusu states in the following manner:

------------------


10 Mahāvibhāṣā (Taisho, 27, 1B).

The seven Abhidharma works of the Sarvāstivāda do not represent one and the same period of Buddhist philosophy, nor do they agree with one another as regards the expositions of categories and nomenclatures in which these books abound. They must have come into existence one after another, in the course of several centuries before they began to be recognized as a body of literature.12

E. Frauwallner, Taiken Kimura and others, without giving the actual date for the composition of the texts, classify three periods in the evolution of the Sarvāstivāda Abhidharma texts. The first is the period of the composition the Saṅgītīparyāya and the Dharmaskandha, which were composed immediately after the composition of the Nikāya and Agama. The second is the period of the composition of various commentaries including the Vijñānakāya, the Prakaranapāda, the JP and its commentary, the Mahāvibhāṣā (hereafter abbreviated as MVS) and so on. The third is the composition of the works which systematized the Sarvāstivāda doctrines and represented the final stage in the evolution of the Sarvāstivāda school. The Abhidharmakośa is the most well-known and influential text in this last period.13

Thus, the JP, which falls in the second category, was

12 Takakusu, pp.118-119.

the first work that expounded the specific view of philosophy of the school. It was probably composed around the first century BC. Some commentaries were produced by many scholars in Gandhara and Kashmir.\textsuperscript{14} The \textit{JP}, a systematic work, had a great influence on later texts. The \textit{JP}, like the other six texts, is extant only in Chinese.

Also in the second category are commentaries on the \textit{JP}. The most detailed of which is the \textit{MVS} whose authorship is attributed to 500 arhats under the direction of Vasumitra. This text was translated into Chinese by Hsuan-Tsang 656-659 AD.\textsuperscript{15} Another commentary on the \textit{JP}, the \textit{Vibhāṣā-Śāstra}, is traditionally attributed to Kātyāyanīputra himself. This text was translated into Chinese by Buddhavarman and others.\textsuperscript{16} Of the two, the \textit{MVS}, which is more extensive in its explanation, can be appreciated in terms of the development of Sarvāstivāda thought. Neither are extant in the original Sanskrit.

Many scholars of the Sarvāstivāda, though admitting the importance of these commentaries, seemed to have had difficulty in studying them because of their forbidding length and complexity. A digest or primer seemed necessary

\textsuperscript{14}Yoshimoto, p.34.
\textsuperscript{15}\textit{Mahāvibhāṣā} (Taisho, #1545).
\textsuperscript{16}\textit{Vibhāṣā-Śāstra} (Taisho, #1546).
to tackle them. Dharmaśrī's *Abhidharmahṛdaya* (hereafter abbrebiated as AH), which has been traditionally regarded as a digest of the MVS, fulfilled this role. According to Hajime Sakurabe, the AH, which falls in the third category, was one of the most important texts that neatly systematized Sarvāstivāda thought. This text has two commentaries. A detailed discussion on these two texts together with the AH itself will be made in the next chapter.

The AK of Vasubandhu is another post-Vibhāṣā Sarvāstivāda Abhidharma text. It was composed in North-West India during fifth century AD. It was greatly influenced by the systematic and philosophical views of the AH. This text has been one of the most thoroughly examined works in the history of Buddhism. It should be noted that the author, Vasubandhu himself, was not a Vaibhāṣika but a Sautrāntika, and due to that bias he was frequently critical of the Sarvāstivāda (especially that of the Vaibhāṣika of Kashmir). Vasubandhu later composed the *Karmasiddhiprakarana*, the *Vimśatikā* and the *Trimśikā*, etc. Thus he had a great influence on the development of Mahāyāna Buddhism—

---

17 Sakurabe, pp.58-59.
18 *Abhidharmahṛdaya-sūtra* (Taisho. #1551); *Miśraka-abhidharmahṛdaya-Sāstra* (Taisho, #1552).
19 Griffiths, p.194.
especially the Yogācāra school.20

Saṅghabhadra, one of the Vaibhāṣikas, composed the Abhidharmanyāyānuśaraśāstra by drawing upon the structure of the AK. His first concern was to refute the Sautrāntika views expressed in the AK. Then, in composing the Abhidharmapitakaparakaranaśasanaśāstra, he defined the tenets of his own school. Both works were written originally in Sanskrit, but now are extant only in Chinese.21 Counterarguments against the Mahāyāna employed by the Sarvāstivādins are also found in the Abhidharmadīpa, whose authorship is uncertain. An incomplete version of this text and its commentary are extant only in Sanskrit.22 These works exhibit a tension between the dominant Sarvāstivāda school and other dissident schools, exhibiting the sophisticated level of philosophical argumentation up to that time.

Through the activities of the Sarvāstivādins, North-West India (especially Kashmir) became a center of Buddhist philosophical studies. Other schools too though, such as


21 Abhidharmanyāyānusāraśāstra (Taisho, #1562); Abhidharmapitakaparakaranaśasanaśāstra (Taisho, #1563).

the Sammatīya, a subdivision of the Vātsūputrīya, gained popularity. Around the seventh century, this school was more vital than the Sarvāstivāda.\textsuperscript{23} The Sarvāstivāda, especially Kashmir-Vaibhāṣikas, eventually exhausted their philosophical arguments and had no hope for doctrinal development. On the other hand, the Sarvāstivādins in Mathura were still vital and then proclaimed themselves the Mūla-Sarvāstivādins (meaning that the original Sarvāstivādins) in order to distinguish themselves from the Kashmir-Vaibhāṣikas.\textsuperscript{24} However, with the development of Mahāyāna Buddhism, both the Mūla-Sarvāstivādins and the Kashmir-Vaibhāṣikas in time lost any stronghold they may have had.

After the tenth century AD, the Sarvāstivāda school stagnated, produced no more Abhidharma works and eventually disappeared. However, the school layed the ground-work for wide-ranging and precise argumentation of Buddhist doctrine. Its influence on later Buddhist thought proved to be extensive, demonstrated by the fact that various Sarvāstivāda Abhidharma texts are still studied in China, Tibet and Japan as core texts in the exploration of Buddhist philosophy.

\textsuperscript{23} Shizutani, pp.220-221.
\textsuperscript{24} ibid., pp.153-160.
CHAPTER TWO

THE POSITION OF THE ABHIDHARMARADAYA

IN THE HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE SARVASTIVADA THOUGHT

1. Abhidharmaradaya: Its Author

The Abhidharmaradaya (AH) was a work which neatly systematized and outlined the doctrine of the Sarvastivada school. It was originally written in Sanskrit, but is now extant only in Chinese. There are few primary sources available to us for the reconstruction of the life of its author. Even the name of its author in the original Sanskrit is uncertain. The search for historical evidence to indicate an early Indian author is fraught with many problems. Therefore, I shall briefly make reference to the sources available, concluding with my own tentative suggestions.

The AH is attributed to Dharmaśri, though there is much debate whether or not Dharmaśri can properly be Fa-sheng's name (Fa-sheng is the Chinese translation of the author's name) in Sanskrit. Taiken Kimura reconstructs Fa-sheng as Dharmaśri.¹ Chiren Akanuma, however, prefers Dharmaśreṣṭhin

because of the final -ti in the transcription of his name, Ta-mo-shih-li-ti.\textsuperscript{2} I agree with Charles Willmen that T'an-mo-shih-li mentioned in the Ch'\textsuperscript{u} Yao Ching (a Chinese translation of the Udānavarga) is probably the author of the AH and the transcription for Dharmaśrī. Moreover, 'sheng' is a common translation of 'śrī'.\textsuperscript{3} It must be said, however, that more research into this issue is needed; For example, investigating other Indian Buddhist materials as well as various Sanskrit manuscripts found in Central Asia which might contain some information about the author of the AH.\textsuperscript{4} A full investigation of this kind lies outside the scope of this study. Dharmaśrī is the best tentative suggestion we can make at the present time.

One of the sources available to us for the reconstruction of Dharmaśrī's life is the San Lun Hsuan I of Chi-tsang (549-623 AD). Chi-tsang mentions that Dharmaśrī lived around 700-800 years after the Buddha's


\textsuperscript{4}Kogi Kudara lately argues that "Dharmavijaya" is more appropriate than Dharmaśrī. His suggestion is made by employing Uigur materials. See "Uigur-yaku abidarumaronsho nimieru ronshi ronsho no bonmei", Inodogaku bukkyōgaku kenkyū, 1982, vol. 31-1, pp.371-374.
Nirvāṇa. Pu-kuang's Chu-she Lun Chi, a Chinese commentary on the Abhidharmakośa, written around 655-665 AD, on the other hand, mentions that Dharmaśrī lived around the fifth century after the Buddha's Nirvāṇa; he was active in Tukhara-Balkh, the present-day North-East region of Afghanistan, and composed the AH.

According to Chinese tradition, the Buddha may have died at some time between c.500 and c.400 BC. This tradition was conveyed by an Indian monk named Saṅghabhadra, who came to China in 489 AD. According to the Vinaya tradition of Indian monks, he placed the death year of the Buddha in 486 BC and the birth year in 566 BC. His chronology seems to be reliable and many scholars follow it. Relying on the tradition of Saṅghabhadra, Pachow fixed the time of the death of the Buddha at about 483 BC. Having investigated legends in Sanskrit, Tibetan and Chinese, Hakui Ui concluded that the dates of the Buddha are 466-386 BC. His chronology

---

5San Lun Hsuan I (Taisho, 45, 2C).

6Chu-she Lun Chi (Taisho, 41, 11C).


is generally accepted by Japanese and Chinese scholars. If we accept Ui's chronology, it should be suggested that Dharmasrī lived sometime between 100 AD and 200 AD, or at sometime between 300 AD and 400 AD. But there is further evidence which can be examined.

I shall, then, introduce some of the chronological discussions on the composition of the AH. Tao-yen suggests that Dharmasrī should be placed before the JP of Kātyāyanīputra and this suggestion is accepted by E. Frauwallnner. The JP is generally placed in 150-50 BC.

Upon examination, however, the AH seems to be more recent than the JP because of the fact that both the form of the AH, a mixed verse/prose text, and the views expressed in the text show a higher development than the JP. Several centuries seem to separate these two texts. This view, broadly speaking, is followed by many Japanese scholars.

---


12 Masao Shizutani, Shojo bukkyoshi no kenkyu, (Kyoto: Hykkaen, 1978),p.113-114

According to this view, the suggestion that Dharmārī may have lived sometime between 100 AD and 200 AD is more probable than the earlier dates.

It should be noted that the AH has been traditionally regarded as a digest or primer of the MVS. This is mentioned in Chi-tsang's San Lun Hsuan I.\footnote{San Lun Hsuan I (Taisho, 45, 2C).} Accepting this tradition, Taiken Kimura and others place the MVS in 150 AD and the AH around 200 AD.\footnote{Kimura, Abhidatumaron no kenkyu, pp.207-256; Masao Shizutani, Shojobukkyoshi no kenkyu, (Kyoto: Hykkaen, 1978), p.138; Kokuyaku, bidonbu, vol. 21, p.120.}

Some Japanese scholars, however, disagree with this traditional view. Investigating the relationship between the MVS and the AH, Ryujo Yamada argues that the AH is roughly contemporary with or slightly earlier than the MVS. He suggests that the AH was not necessarily a digest of the MVS. He also suggests that 'Vibhaśā' in Chi-tsang's San Lun Hsuan I does not indicate the extant MVS, and seems to indicate some kind of MVSs.\footnote{Yamada, p.416-430.} Shunkyo Katumata argues that there is no direct relationship between the two texts with respect to the doctrine of thought concomitants (caitta).\footnote{Shunkyo Katumata, Bukkyo niokeru shinshikisetu no kenkyū, (Tokyo: Sankibo, 1974), pp.367-369.} Ryogon Fukuhara concludes that the AH was composed sometime...
between the composition of the JP and that of the MVS.\textsuperscript{18}

This conclusion, though not without difficulties, is followed by many scholars\textsuperscript{19} and supports the suggestion that Dharmaśrī lived between 100-200 AD.

It should be noted that the \textit{Kao-seng Chuan} tells that Dharmakāla, an Indian monk, came to China in the middle of the 3rd Century AD, after having studied the AH in India.\textsuperscript{20}

Thus, the AH must have been existed before then. Considering all the above-mentioned chrononological discussions, the most reasonable hypothesis is that Dharmaśrī lived sometime between 100 AD and 200 AD.

As mentioned above, according to Pu-kuang, Dharmaśrī was active in Tukukala-Balkhu, the present-day north-west region of Afganistan, not in Kāsmīr. From a geographical viewpoint, he seems to have been an Abhidharma master called Bahirdeśaka (meaning 'a master living outside of Kāsmīr'). Doctrinally he also seemed to have been a Bahirdeśaka, because he sometimes did not accept the views of the

\textsuperscript{18}Fukuhara, pp.395-396.


\textsuperscript{20}\textit{Kao-seng Chuan} (Taisho, 50, 324C).
orthodox Kasmir-Vaibhāṣika.\textsuperscript{21}

It must be said again that a great deal of work remains to be done on the life and work of Dharmaśrī. The purpose of this section has been to present a brief introduction to the problems and a very tentative suggestion placing Dharmaśrī within the context of the development of Sarvāstivāda Buddhist thought.

2. Text, Translations & Commentaries

The AH, since its composition in North-West India during the third century AD, has been one of the most important texts in the history of the Sarvāstivāda school. It is a mixed verse/prose text of ten chapters originally written in Sanskrit. But, like the other main Sarvāstivāda Abhidharma texts, it is now extant only in Chinese. The text contains 247 verses (kārikā) and detailed explanations of them (bhashya).

Frauwallner reconstructs the original title of the Chinese A-p'i-t'An hsìn lún as Abhidharmsāra. Some Japanese scholars, on the other hand, suggest that the original title may have been Abhidharmahrdaya. Considering the doctrinal content of the text, I. Armelin concludes that 'hrdaya' is more appropriate than 'sāra'. Moreover, Koji Kudara has recently discovered the original title, Abhidharmahrdaya in the Uigur translation of the Tattvārthā,

----------------------


a commentary on the AK.25 The Abhidharmahrdaya is, therefore, the best suggestion thus far.

The AH was first translated into Chinese by an Indian monk, Dharmarandhi, around 380 AD. His translation was, however, illegible due to his poor Chinese.26 Samghadeva, an Abhidharma specialist from Kashmir, also translated the text in the form of sixteen chuan or volumes.27 Around the same period Samghadeva seems to have translated the same text in the form of five chuan with Tao-an in Ch'ang-an.28 But neither of these texts are extant. In 391 AD., Samghadeva again translated the text in the form of four chuan on Mt. Lu, with the help of Hui-yuan.29 This Chinese translation, A-p'i-t'an Hsin Lun is contained in the Taisho shinshu daizokyo (Taisho, #1550). This is the text to which we shall make reference and translate in the following part.

Taiken Kimura states that there was a Tibetan version of Dharmaśri's work.30 As far as we know, however, the


26 Chu San Tsang Chi Chi (Taisho, 55, 95C, 109B, 110A): Kao-seng Chuan (Taisho, 50, 328B, 358B).

27 Chu San Tsang Chi Chi (Taisho, 55, 10C).

28 ibid., (Taisho, 55, 42B).

29 ibid., (Taisho, 55, 10C).

30 Kimura, p.272.
Tibetan translation of Dharmaśrī's works is not extant.

It should be noted that there exists a manuscript (Stein, #6659; Giles, #4336) of Saṃghadeva's translation of the AH found in Tun-huang. This corresponds to one-third of the last part of the Taishō edition.31 We shall make use of this manuscript as is necessary.

The AH by itself is terse and at times almost incomprehensible. For a proper understanding of it a commentary is necessary. Around 300 AD., Upāśānta, a Sarvāstivādin, wrote such a commentary on the AH called the Abhidharmahṛdaya-sūtra (hereafter abbreviated as AHS).32 According to its preface there existed many commentaries on the AH.33 In the discussion that follows we shall make reference only to the surviving Indian commentaries.

The AHS was originally written in Sanskrit, but is now extant only in Chinese. The Chinese text contains 249 verses (kārikā) and their explanations (bhāsyā).

The AHS was translated by Narendraśa, together with Fa-chih and others in 563 AD. in the form of six chuan.34

--------------------


32 Kokuyaku, vol. 21, p.124.

33 AHS (Taishō, 28, 833B).

34 Li Tai San Pao Chi (Taishō, 49, 87C).
At that time in China, there already existed more detailed commentaries on the AH as well as other Abhidharma texts, making this translation of the AHS superfluous. This Chinese translation, A-p'i-t'an Hsin Lun Ching is contained in the Taisho shinshu daizokyo (Taisho #1551). This text, however, is one of the limited sources which can provide us with a better understanding to the AH.

Dharmātrāta, a Sarvāstivāda Abhidharma master, wrote a commentary on the AH around the last half of the 4th century in Puśkaravati in the region of Gandhara. It was also a mixed verse/prose text with eleven chapters, originally written in Sanskrit and now extant only in Chinese.

Taiken Kimura and others suggest that the original Sanskrit title of this text should be the Samyukta-abhidharma-hṛdaya-śāstra. Having investigated Uigur materials, Kogi Kudara has recently argued that the original Sanskrit title should be the Miśraka-abhidharmahṛdayaśāstra. This title is indicated in the Uigur translation of the Tattvārtha, a commentary of the Abhidharmakośa. That seems most plausible, for the term

35 Kokuyaku, vol. 21, p.126.
36 Kimura, p.287.
'Miśraka-kāra' (meaning, 'the author of the Miśraka') is also found in the Abhidharmakośavyākhya where it seems to indicate Dharmārāta. A full investigation of this issue employing all the materials available is called for, but that lies outside the scope of this study. I will employ Miśrakābhidharmahrdayaśāstra (hereafter abbreviated as MAS) as the title.

Drawing heavily upon the structure of the AH, Dharmārāta added 349 stanzas to the 247 stanzas of the AH, gave a more detailed analysis and developed his own systematization. Despite the fact that Dharmārāta was a Gandhara-Sarvāstivādin, we shall see that there is a strong relationship between the MAS and the systematic philosophical views of the Kasmīr-Vaibhāṣika. This relationship is especially strong in the case of the Mahāvibhāṣā; Kimura, Watanabe and others have pointed out many parallel passages in these two works. It is therefore sufficient to state that the MAS was written fairly close in time to the the Mahāvibhāṣā, or that Dharmārāta, at least, must have been familiar with the Mahāvibhāṣā during his composition of the MAS. The MAS, as Taiken Kimura points out, profoundly influenced the composition of the

---

39 Abhidharmakośavyākhya, ed. by Wogihara, p. 251.

Abhidharmakośa of Vasubandhu.\textsuperscript{41} 

The \textit{MAS} was translated into Chinese several times. The extant text, \textit{Tsa A-p'i-t'an Hsin Lun} was translated by the Abhidharma master Saṃghavarman and others in 435 AD.\textsuperscript{42} This text is contained in the \textit{Taisho shinshu daizokyo} (Taisho, #1552).

It should be noted that around 4th and 5th century AD, there was a school called P'i-t'an Tsung or Abhidharma-school in China. As neither the translation of \textit{Mahāvibhāṣā} nor that of \textit{AK} had been completed yet, the \textit{MAS} was the most studied text of that school.\textsuperscript{43} The \textit{AK} having been translated by Paramārtha between 563 and 567 AD. and again by Hsuan-tsang between 651 and 654 AD., the Chu-she Tsung or Kośa school subsequently replaced the P'i-t'an Tsung. Since then, the primacy of the \textit{AK} has been unsurpassed by any other Abhidharma text.\textsuperscript{44}

At this point I shall briefly survey modern works done on the \textit{AH} and its commentaries. First, there are complete

\textsuperscript{41}Kimura, p.222-241.

\textsuperscript{42}Chu San Tsang Chi Chi (Taisho, 55, 12A-B).

\textsuperscript{43}Kokuyaku, vol.20, pp.25-27.

Japanese translations of the AH, AHS and MAS. These annotated translations are especially interesting. It is regrettable, though, that these translations are written in classical Japanese and are, therefore, inaccessible to most Western scholars.

Second, the AH has been translated into Western languages and though often those translations are of dubious value due to their idiosyncratic methods, they are useful for their attempt to provide translations of all the major Abhidhārmic technical terms in the AH. Two examples of which are: an English translation done by Charles Willemen, The Essence of Metaphysics--Abhidharmahṛdaya, (Bruxelles: Publication de l'Institute Belge des Hautes Etudes Bouddhiques, 1975) and a French translation done by I Armelin, Le Coeur de la Loi Suprême. Traité de Fa-Cheng--Abhidharmahṛdayaśāstra, (Paris: Geuthner, 1978). Both include a very informative introduction and notes. I do not know of any translation in Western language of the AHS nor the MAS that presently exists.

These available works, of course, provide a new dimension to Abhidharma studies. However, without


46 See the informative review article by J.W. de Jong in Eastern Buddhist, 13, 1980, pp.151-158.
interpreting and contextualizing the central theme of a classical Buddhist text within the historical development of Buddhist thought, the reader is often at a loss. This is particularly true with reference to Abhidharma Buddhist texts. This study attempts to make a small contribution by examining the thought of the AH in one area: the evolution of karma thought.
3. Structure of the *Abhidharmahrdaya*

The *Ah* is comprised of ten chapters. The following is a list of chapter titles and an outline of the contents of the *Ah*:

I. EXPOSITION ON THE COMPONENTS OF MATTER (*Dhātu-varga*)
   (Taisho, 28, 809A-810B)

II. EXPOSITION ON THE FORMATIONS (*Samskāra-varga*)
    (810B-812B)

III. EXPOSITION ON KARMA (*Karma-varga*)
     (812B-815A)

IV. EXPOSITION ON PASSIONS (*Anuśaya-varga*)
    (815B-818A)

V. EXPOSITION ON NOBLENESSE (*Ārya-varga*)
   (818A-820B)

VI. EXPOSITION ON KNOWLEDGE (*Jñāna-varga*)
    (820B-823A)

VII. EXPOSITION ON SPIRITUAL ATTAINMENT (*Samādhi-varga*)
     (823A-826B)

VIII. SUPPLEMENT (*Sūtra-varga*)
     (826B-830B)

IX. MISCELLANEOUS (*Samyukta-varga*)
    (830B-833A)

X. DEBATE (*Kathā-varga*)
   (833A-833B)

The first chapter—an exposition on the components of matter—introduces the domain of 'Abhidharma' as the
enumeration of all dharmas. The dharmas are then discussed with respect to the following four viewpoints: (1) uncontaminated (anāsrava) dharmas and contaminated (sāsrava) dharma; (2) aggregates (skandha), spheres (āyatana) and components (dhātu); (3) classification of 18 components (dhātu) and (4) own-nature (svabhāva).

The second chapter—an exposition on the formations—deals with how dharmas come into existence. The following seven issues are discussed: (1) the relationship between a dharma and its necessary precondition (pratyaya); (2) mental states (caitta); (3) mental states and the three realms; (4) form (rupa) and dharmas not associated with the mind (citta-viprayukta-samskāra-dharma); (5) six causes (hetu); (6) four necessary preconditions (pratyaya) and (7) conditioned (samskrta) dharmas.

The third chapter—an exposition on Karma--, together with the fourth chapter, provides the heart of the soteriological teaching of the Abhidharma. A detailed discussion on the concept of Karma is contained in this chapter.

The fourth chapter—an exposition on passions—describes various human passions (kleśa). The ninety-eight passions are first enumerated and their characteristics are discussed. A discussion follows on how to eradicate these passions. Finally the relationship between the passions and the mind is described.
The fifth chapter—an exposition on nobleness—describes various types of practitioners. For obtaining perfect knowledge and reaching perfect emancipation, various practices have been developed throughout Buddhist history. Among others, the four mindfulnesses (smṛtyupasthāna) are introduced in this chapter. The various stages of practitioners are, then, classified: (1) mundane practitioners; (2) the saints in the stage of 'Śiksana-śīla' (meaning 'those practitioners who have acquired the Four Noble Truths without abandoning passions'); and (3) the final stage of the saint known as 'Arhat' (aśaikṣa-mārga).

The sixth chapter—an exposition on knowledge—describes the means to reach perfect emancipation, that is, 'knowledge' (jñāna). The jñānas are classified into ten kinds and are discussed in detail.

The seventh chapter—an exposition on spiritual attainment—provides the necessary conditions for the attainment of perfect emancipation. Here the various forms of meditation (samādhi) are discussed.

The eighth and ninth chapter are supplements and deal

---

with an array of topics. The eighth chapter deals with such important topics as 'pratītyasamutpāda', the Four Noble Truths, twenty-two organs (indriya) and so on. The ninth chapter deals with dharmas not associated with the mind, unconditioned dharmas and so on.

The final chapter is concerned essentially with the achievement of argumentation which tests the disciple's understanding of Abhidharma.

These ten chapters (varga) of the A⁵, as Ryujo Yamada mentions, are comparable to the eight chapters (skandha) of the fundamental canonical work, JP.⁴⁸ Dharmaśrī, however, organized the complex Sarvāstivāda Buddhist doctrines based upon the Four Noble Truths--the essential teaching of the Buddha.⁴⁹ This systematization seems to be more neat and developed than that of the JP. It can be outlined as follows:

---------------------
⁴⁸ Yamada, p.114.
⁴⁹ ibid., p.117.
GENERAL TEACHING

I  Dhātu  *Classification of the perceptible or rūpa

II  Samskāra  *Classification of the non-perceptible or arūpa
*Pratītyasamutpāda

Truth of Suffering (duhkhasatya)

DETAILED TEACHING

III  Karma  *The cause of the suffering

IV  Anuśaya  *The condition of the suffering

Cause of Suffering (samudayasatya)

V  Ārya  *The notion of emancipation

VI  Jñāna  *The cause of emancipation

Extinction of Suffering (nirodhasatya)

VII  Samādhi  *The condition of emancipation

The Path to Nirvāṇa (mārgasatya)

SUPPLEMENT

VIII  Sūtra

IX  Samyukta

X  Kathā

This systematization was duplicated in the AHS and the MAS. Taiken Kimura was the first to describe a definite link between Vasubandhu’s AK and Dharmātrāta’s MAS, and concluded
that the *AH* greatly influenced the composition of the *AK*.\(^{50}\)

This brief summary of the contents and systematization of the *AH* reveals that the *AH* is neatly systematized, a work intended to provide a complete and coherent summary of Sarvāstivāda Buddhist doctrines. This is also indicated by the very title of this work—'*Abhidharmahṛdaya*' (The Heart of Abhidharma).

---

\(^{50}\)Kimura, p. 301.
CHAPTER THREE

KARMA: ITS CONCEPT & DEVELOPMENT IN THE SARVASTIVADA SCHOOL

1. Karma and Its Various Aspects

A. The Term 'Karma'

The term 'karma' or 'karman' ('kamma' in Pali) is a neuter noun and is often used in the singular. It ordinarily means 'action'. Etymologically, the root--kr, signified 'to do' or 'to make'. Yet, its usage has been extensive in the whole of Indian philosophy.¹

In the Sarvāstivāda's texts, the term 'karma' appears as a technical term. The Mahāvibhāṣā (MVS) gives the following three definitions:

(1) action,
(2) Buddhist precepts and rites, and
(3) human action as the agent of various effects.²

The first gives its etymological analysis: karma here refers to action in general. In the MVS, the term 'karma' is supplanted by 'kriyā' or 'kārita' (both mean 'activity').³

²MVS (Taisho, 27, 587B).
³ibid.
The second indicates rules of the religious code of the Buddhist community. The term 'kamma' used in the Vinaya most often refers to formal conduct or ceremonies in the Buddhist community (samgha). This usage can be traced back to the sacrificial performance (it is also called 'karma') described in Vedic literature.\(^4\) Buddhism seemed to follow this Indian tradition.

The third definition of 'karma' is the technical usage by the Sarvāstivāda school. This should be understood within the concept of dependent co-arising (pratītya-samutpāda): human action brings about either pleasant or painful effects. In other words, the action, as such, is the cause of these effects. Karma is to be understood as the link between these cause and effects. In this way, the Sarvāstivādins understand this phenomenal world to be a creation not dependent on God, but the product of impersonal responses to human choices and actions. Based on this understanding, Dharmaśrī begins the Karma-chapter with the following verse:

KARMA ORNAMENTS THE VARIOUS DESTINIES AND THE VARIOUS CIRCUMSTANCES IN THE WORLD. HENCE REFLECT ON KARMA AND SEEK RELEASE FROM THE WORLD. (AH, Taisho, 28, 812B)

Therefore, the term 'karma' particularly indicates human action as the agent of various effects. Now, we will examine this specific interpretation of karma.

B. Body-action, Speech-action and Mind-action

As explained, the Sarvāstivāda defines the term 'karma' specifically as human action. But, what is human action? The Sarvāstivāda's texts reply: human action indicates 'body-action' (kāya-karma), 'speech-action' (vāk-karma) and 'mind-action' (manas-karma). The first two, body and speech-actions can be easily understood as human action. In Buddhism, even one's thought, which is not realized as outward action, is also considered to be human action. Each of these three actions produces various effects. This threefold division of human action was originally presented in the Nikāya.

According to the Buddha, these three actions are induced by one's 'volition' or 'intentional impulse' (cetanā). The Nikāya says: "I explain, monks, that karma is intentional impulse (cetanā); having intended to do so (cetayitvā), one performs action by one's body, speech or

---

5 AH (Taisho, 28, 812B); AHS (Taisho, 28, 839C); MAS (Taisho, 28, 888A) and so on.

6 For example, MN, I, 206; AN, III, 415 and so on.
mind." ⁷ One's volition is, therefore, a mental state (citta) which produces these three actions.

Having investigated various usages of the term 'cetanā' in the Vinaya and Nikāya, James McDermott concludes thus:

'Cetanā' is not a matter of 'volition' or 'will' alone, but also involves the impulse or drive to carry through with what is intended. Deliberate intention to do a deed plays an essential role in determining the ethical quality of that deed. Thus, a person who commits accidental manslaughter is not subject to karmic consequences as serious as those suffered by the perpetrator of a perpetrated murder. In the same vein, throughout the Vinaya Pitaka the penalties which are laid down for intentional violations of the monastic rules are more severe than those exacted for violations committed unwittingly. ⁸

McDermott proposes that all three actions preserve the element of cetanā. That is, mind-action is purely intentional impulse, while body-action and speech-action are intentional impulses which put the body and voice in motion, not simply the actions ensuant upon such impulses. In this way, karma is understood to be more than just action; intentional impulse (cetanā) is always concomitant with these three actions. Then, the actions which ensue from such

---

⁷AN, III, p.415.

intentional impulses are called 'having intended-action' (cetayitvā-karma). This emphasis on the role of cetanā with regard to action was the Buddha's contribution to the concept of karma. This canonical interpretation has been followed by such schools as Theravāda and Sautrāntika.9

In dealing with the relationship between one and one's own world, the Sarvāstivāda school establishes various dharmas. In the Prakaranapāda, these dharmas are classified into five categories: (1) material form (rūpa); (2) mind (citta); (3) mental state (caitā); (4) dharma dissociated from mind (citta-viprayukta-dharma) and (5) unconditioned (asamskrta) dharma.10

The Sarvāstivāda also understands that each dharma is in a state of flux, i.e., a momentary event. Human action is also understood as a momentary event, and is explained within the framework of this categorization of dharmas. Body-action, therefore, indicates each segment of a series of bodily movements at a certain moment. This bodily 'shape'

9Mcdermott, Development..., pp.28-29; pp.132-133; "Karma and Rebirth in Early Buddhism", p.182.

10Prakaranapāda (Taisho, 26,692B). In the AH, only conditioned (samskrta) dharmas are classified into five categories: (1) aggregate of material form (rūpa-skandha); (2) aggregate of feeling (vedanā-skandha); aggregate of idea (samjñā-skandha); (4) aggregate of disposition (samskāra-skandha) (all mental states except for feeling, idea and cognition are included in this category.) and (5) aggregate of cognition. (Taisho, 28, 809B.24ff).
(samsthāna) at that moment, a visible dharma (rūpa-āyatana), is included in the category of material form (rūpa). Likewise, speech-action indicates each segment of human voice at a certain moment. This momentary 'sound' (śabda), an audible dharma (śabda-āyatana), is also included in the category of material form.

Now, mind-action should be clearly differentiated from these two material actions. For the Sarvāstivāda, one's mind (citta), as such, is a dharma and cannot occur by itself. Some factor is necessary for it to arise and produce an effect. This factor is one of various mental states (caitta). Therefore, one's mind and mental states are always co-related (sahotpanna). In other words, a mental state is necessary for one's mind to produce an action; this mental state is 'volition' or 'intentional impulse' (cetanā). The Sarvāstivāda, therefore, understands thus:

As stated in a sutra, there are two karmas: 'volition'(cetanā) and the karma 'after having intended to do it' (cetayitvā). That is, mind-action should be understood as volition and that which is engendered by volition should be understood as karma after having intended to do it (cetanājanita), i.e., body-action and speech-action.

---

11 Vijñaptikāya (Taisho,26, 583A).
12 Prakaranapāda (Taisho, 26, 697B).
14 AK, p.192.10ff.
In this way, the Sarvāstivādins regards mind-action as volition per se, and distinguishes it from body and speech-actions.\textsuperscript{15} Then, the process of arising action is explained in two stages: Mind-action, i.e., 'volition' (cetanā-karma) first arises; it is only after mind-action occurs that body and speech-actions arise (cetayitvā-karma).\textsuperscript{16} This view is represented by the orthodox Kashmir-Vaiśeṣika.

The \textit{AH}, as well as its commentaries, classifies these three actions in a different way. In these texts, it is also articulated that mind-action is the essential nature (svabhāva) of volition.\textsuperscript{17} However, they do not explain the process of arising action in two stages. The \textit{MAS} explains that volition is necessary for one to produce body and speech-actions; volition is in the process of producing body and speech-actions at the present moment.\textsuperscript{18} In this way, the \textit{AH}, together with its commentaries, explains action as the process of presently arising action with one's volition. Therefore, they do not accept the concept of cetayitvā-karma.

Vasubandhu also criticises the orthodox Kashmir-

\textsuperscript{15}MVS (Taisho, 27, 587A).
\textsuperscript{16}See Sakurabe, pp.103-4
\textsuperscript{17}\textit{AH} (Taisho, 28 812B.26-C.7); \textit{MAS} (Taisho, 28, 888B.21-22).
\textsuperscript{18}\textit{MAS} (Taisho, 28, 888C.12; 889A.1-3).
Vaibhāṣika from the Sautrāntika's viewpoint:

First there is a 'determining' volition (samkalpa-cetanā)—"I will do such and such." After having intended to do so, 'actual' volition (kriyā-cetanā) arises. When one's body is actually moved by this type of volition, this body-action is called the 'karma after having intended to do so' (cetayitvā-karma). Body-action is the action that is sustained by one's body, and volition is always the agent (pranetṛi) of the body-action. Speech and mind-actions should be understood in the same manner.19

In this way, Vasubandhu follows the canonical interpretation on the three-fold division of actions. He emphasizes volition and explains that it is the agent of body-action, speech-action and even mind-action. That is, he does not regard mind-action as volition per se, but extends the meaning of mind-action to include all mental activities. In his emphasis on the role of volition in one's action and his extention of the meaning of mind-action, we can see the rudiments of Yogacāra thought.

The following chart represents various interpretations of the three-fold division of actions:

19 Ak, p.195.17ff.
(1) The Nikāya and The Sautrāntika (AK)

Volition \rightarrow \text{(Having Intended)} \rightarrow \text{Body-action}
\quad \rightarrow \text{Speech-action}
\quad \rightarrow \text{Mind-action}

(2) The Vaibhāṣika (AK; MVS)

I \quad \text{Volition} \rightarrow \text{Mind-action}
\quad \downarrow
\quad \text{II} \quad \text{Having Intended} \rightarrow \text{Body-action}
\quad \quad \rightarrow \text{Speech-action}

(3) AH and Its Commentaries

Mind-action \quad \rightarrow \text{Volition} \rightarrow \text{Body-action}
\quad \quad \rightarrow \text{Speech-action}

C. Manifested action and Unmanifested Action

According to the Sarvāstivāda, body and speech-action are further classified into 'vijñapti' (meaning
manifested') and 'avijñapti' (meaning 'unmanifested'). The concept of avijñapti was established by this school.

The term 'vijñapti' is a feminine abstract noun composed of the prefix, 'vi', plus the causal strengthened verbal root, 'jñā'. Various meanings are appropriate for this combination: to distinguish, discern, observe, investigate, recognize, know, understand, and so on. Vijñapti is usually translated as information. In Buddhist Sanskrit, vijñapti means 'proclamation', 'announcement' and 'making known'. Thus, 'avijñapti,' which is formed by adding the negative prefix 'a', has been translated as 'non-information'.

According to this etymological analysis, the term 'vijñapti' would mean "that which causes one to know distinctly"; 'avijñapti' would mean "that which does not cause one to know distinctly." Dharmaśrī, in his


AH, therefore, accepts the earlier usage, and simply applied *vijñapti* to body and speech-action which manifest themselves outwardly; *avijñapti* to mind-action which does not manifest itself outwardly. Earlier Sarvastivāda texts rendered these two terms in the same way.\(^{23}\)

In later Sarvastivāda texts, however, the term 'avijñapti' is found as a technical term which is employed in the discussion of karma. As mentioned above, the Sarvastivāda understands body-action as a momentary shape and speech-action as a momentary sound. Body-action is further classified into the two: manifested body-action (*kāya-vijñapti*) and unmanifested body-action (*kāya-avijñapti*); speech-action is the same: manifested speech-action (*vāk-vijñapti*) and unmanifested speech-action (*vāk-avijñapti*). Both manifested body-action and manifested speech-action are actions which manifest themselves outwardly.\(^{24}\)

Now, what are unmanifested (*avijñapti*) body-action and unmanifested speech-action? Genjun H. Sasaki explains that *avijñapti* signifies an unseen, latent faculty, and is a morally potent element.\(^{25}\) In order to clarify this concept,

\(^{23}\)AH (Taisho, 28, 812C); AHS (Taisho, 28, 840A).

\(^{24}\)MAS (Taisho, 28, 888B); AK, p.192.

he gives an example:

When one attempts to perform a bad action, his/her intention to perform that action arises first. In the next moment, he/she decides to perform the action, and then actually performs it. While he/she is intending to perform a bad action, there are two options available: to carry it out or not to carry it out. If he/she decides to carry out a bad action, it indicates that his/her intention to perform a bad action overcame his/her intention not to perform it. In this case, an unseen, latent power prevents the intention to perform good actions from arising and forces one to perform bad actions. This unseen, latent power is 'avijñāpti'.

In this way, an unseen, latent power is, having performed manifested body-action, produced by the manifested body-action, and remains in one's body. It is called unmanifested body-action. Likewise, an unseen latent power is, having performed manifested speech-action, produced by the manifested speech-action, and remains in one's speech. It is called unmanifested speech-action.

Dharmaśrī specifically interprets this unseen, latent power as the residual power of good or bad actions and as the potential to perform either good or bad actions. Dharmaśrī explains this in the following manner:

As for unmanifested actions, if those actions which one performs are with firm intent, the residual element of actions is transferred among three (wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate) minds transforming them by planting seeds. (Taisho, 28, 812C.3-4)

---------

Dharmaśrī continues:

Such strong and influential actions as manifested body-action and manifested speech-action are able to produce the potential to perform good or bad actions. That potential is transferred among the three minds transforming them.... However, an indeterminate mind is not strong enough to produce such potential. Therefore, both unmanifested body-action and unmanifested speech-action are always either wholesome or unwholesome, and not indeterminate. (Taisho,28, 812C.21-23)

Thus, this unseen, latent power is produced by intentionally good or bad actions, and then, in turn, effects the performance of good or bad actions. In this sense, Sasaki interprets 'avijñāpti' as a morally potent element.27 For the Sarvāstivāda, this morally potent element is the foundation for their Buddhist code of monastic discipline and their system of meditative practice. The Sarvāstivāda, therefore, establishes the concept of 'sāmvara' and 'asāmvara'. 'Sāmvara', which is produced by following the Buddhist precepts and meditative practice, is the potential to perform good actions. 'Asāmvara', which is produced by habitually performing extremely bad actions, is the potential to perform bad actions. These two will be discussed in the section three.

Avijñāpti, the unseen latent power, is sometimes misunderstood as a substantial link between actions and

27 Sasaki, Linguistic Approach to Buddhist Thought, p.128.
their effects.\textsuperscript{28} As mentioned above, the Sarvāstivāda understands that each dharma is a momentary event; avijñapti is also a momentary event. The unseen, latent power is always produced by manifested action, and it shapes one's moral conduct. In the dharmic process, the two are concomitant, they arise and are extinguished together. There is no causal link between them.\textsuperscript{29} Also, this unseen, latent power does not effect the condition of one's next life. When one dies, both manifested body-action and manifested speech-action are extinguished.

As mentioned above, the Sarvāstivāda understands that manifested body-action is a momentary, bodily shape; manifested speech-action is a momentary sound. Both are included in the category of material form (rūpa). The unseen latent power, which always arises on the basis of these material forms, is also included in the category of material form. In this case, the unseen latent power is called 'avijñapti-rūpa'.

However, this avijñapti-rūpa is not actually a rūpa. This problem was raised by Vasubandhu and, the discussion between he and the Vaibhāṣika is found in the AK. But, I do

\textsuperscript{28}Dowling, p.73.

not intend to present their complicated argumentation here.\textsuperscript{30} Rather, I would like to recapitulate the concept of rūpa within the dharma-discourse of the Sarvāstivāda.

First, let us return to the five-fold categorization of dharmas: (1) material form; (2) mind; (3) mental states; (4) dharmas dissociated from mind and (5) unconditioned dharmas. In this categorization, particularly within the first three categories, the Sarvāstivāda attempted to present a contrast between that which is material (rūpa) and that which is mental (citta; caitta) in human body. Therefore, in the Prakaranapāda, the five sense organs (eye; ear; nose; tongue and body) as well as their objects (form and color; sound; smell; taste and tangibility) are considered to be rūpa.\textsuperscript{31}

In order to categorically represent material elements, the Sarvāstivāda employs the four great elements scheme (mahā-bhūta): (1) earth (prthvī); (2) water (āp); (3) fire (agni) and (4) wind (vāyu), with earth representing solidity (khara), water representing liquidity (sneha), fire representing heat (usna) and wind representing mobility (Iranā). This configuration of four is utilized only for the representation of material elements, which are characterized by contact with the human body. Material objects which are a

\textsuperscript{30}See Dowling, pp.87-150.

\textsuperscript{31}Prakaranapāda (Taisho, 26, 692B)
manifestation of the four great elements are called the derivative matter from the four great elements (bhautika-rūpa). Each material object embodies the four great elements as well as the object of sense (form and color; smell; taste and tangibility).\textsuperscript{32}

According to this interpretation of the term 'rūpa' in the Sarvāstivāda, it refers to sensory objects. Therefore, both manifested body-action, as a momentary dharma of shape, and manifested speech-action, as a momentary dharma of sound, are included in the category of rūpa. Also, both are derivative matter from the four great elements. For the Sarvāstivādins, avijñapti-rūpa, which is always co-related to these two material dharmas, is naturally included in the category of rūpa.\textsuperscript{33}

Avijñapti-rūpa is, however, discriminated from other material dharmas, and is regarded as a specific rūpa. In the AH, Dharmaśrī indicates that it is a provisional rūpa.\textsuperscript{34} In the AK, it is specifically defined as a rūpa included within the 'dharma-sphere' (dharma-āyatana rūpa).\textsuperscript{35}

\textsuperscript{32}AH (Taisho, 28, 811B). See also Shingyo Yoshimoto, Abidarama shisō, (Kyoto: Hozokan, 1982), pp.169-172.

\textsuperscript{33}Hajime Sakurabe, Kusharon no kenkyū, (Kyoto: Hozokan, 1969), p.100.

\textsuperscript{34}AH (Taisho, 28, 809C).

\textsuperscript{35}AK, p.11.
The dharma-sphere indicates 'that which is cognized only by the mind'. It includes (1) mental states; (2) dharmas dissociated from mind; (3) unconditioned dharmas and (4) avijñapti-rūpa.

The Thēravāda school also establishes the concept of forms included within the dharma-sphere. We can see parallel developments in the Pāli Abhidhamma tradition. Various items are listed under the heading of 'dhamma-āyatana-rūpa': faculty of femininity (itthindriya); faculty of masculinity (purisindriya); material faculty of life (rūpa-jīvitindriya); bodily expression (kāyaviññatti); vocal expression (vacīviññatti); lightness (lahutā); plasticity (mudutā); wieldiness (kammaññatā); integration (upacaya); continuity (santati); decay (jaratā); impermanence (aniccatā); space-element (ākāsa-dhātu); nutrition (kabalikāra-āhāra) and heart-basis (hadaya-vatthu).36

But, there is a diversion between the Theravādin and the Sarvāstivādin concept of that which falls into the dharma-sphere. The Theravādins do not recognize under any guise the avijñapti-rūpa, which, for the Sarvāstivāda, is the one and only dhamma-āyatana-rūpa.37 It is clear that, for the Sarvāstivādins, the concept of dhamma-āyatana-rūpa

37ibid., p.36.
is only a means to account for avijñapti-rūpa.

The Sarvāstivāda also establishes the three defining characteristics of rūpa. The first defining characteristic indicates that which is visible, requiring extention and spatial location, i.e., form and color. The second indicates that which is not visible but requires extention and spatial location. The five sense organs and their objects are included in it. The final defining characteristic seems to have been created only to account for avijñapti-rūpa. It is defined as that which is neither visible nor requires extention and spatial location, i.e., avijñapti-rūpa.\(^{38}\)

With respect to rūpa, the Sarvāstivādins were later influenced by other Indian philosophers, and they eventually adopted an analytical approach to the issue. After examination and re-examination of rūpa, they finally arrived at atomism. Atomism, as a topic of discussion, first appeared in the Mahāvibhāṣā. It was concluded there that each material form consists of many atoms.\(^{39}\) Thus, in the MAS, both manifested body-action and speech-action are regarded as an aggregate of atoms. Within this atomic theory, avijñapti-rūpa could no longer be considered a rūpa. But, the Sarvāstivādins still attempted to relate it to

\(^{38}\text{AK, p.196.}\)

\(^{39}\text{Sakurabe, Kusharon no kenkyū, pp.101-103.}\)
manifested actions. The **MAS** explains thus: "When a tree (manifested action) sways [in the wind], its shadow (unmanifested action) also sways."\(^{40}\) In this way, though some contradictions still remain, the Sarvāstivādins persistently include *avijñapti*, the unseen latent power, in the category of *rūpa* (*avijñapti-rūpa*).

This peculiar categorization can be derived from the tradition of the Sarvāstivāda school. Paul Griffiths describes the tradition in the following manner:

> The theoreticians of the Vaibhāṣika tradition were operating under two major constraints in their attempt to categorize and define every existent. The first constraint was that of the tradition itself: Indian philosophers, and in this the Vaibhāṣika thinkers are typical, do not happily abandon any significant element of their own tradition, even when they do not understand it or no longer find it persuasive and significant. The Vaibhāṣika theoretician was therefore constrained to find a place in his system for every significant element in the tradition available to him, even when such elements sat very uneasily within the context of the system being developed.\(^{41}\)

> The second constraint was that of comprehensiveness: to create a system in the full sense of that term the Vaibhāṣikas were constrained to try and account for everything. They were engaged in trying to show that the Buddhist system of categorizing existents was indeed comprehensive in that it could satisfactorily account for all types of experience and thus for the totality of (actual and possible) existents.\(^{41}\)

\(^{40}\) *MAS*, (Taisho, 28, 871C.2-4)

The Sarvástivāda, in this way, attempted to find a place for avijñapti within their schema. That place was rūpa. They also created a new category, 'rupa included in dharma-shere' in order to account for a possible existent, i.e., avijñapti. For the Sarvástivāda, the most significant issue in categorizing avijñapti into rūpa is that avijñapti should be understood as a real entity (dravya); this real entity arises from one's manifested body and speech-actions, and effects one's moral conduct.

Another important issue for the Sarvástivāda is that avijñapti has nothing to do with mind-action. One's mind momentarily arises and is not 'fixed'.⁴² An evil mind arises, but in the next moment, it might be transformed into a good mind. Likewise, one's good mind might be transformed into an evil mind. Within one's mind, therefore, there is no 'fixed' entity. By which notion, the Sarvástivāda recognizes free will. So, the concept of karma is not deterministic in the sense that everything one does is strictly governed by everything one did in the past; each action is performed based on free will, i.e., volition (cetanā) in Buddhism.

⁴²Sasaki, Linguistic Approach to Buddhist Thought, p.129.
2. Karma and the Concept of Dependent Co-arising

A. Karma and Its Causal Relationship

In the Nikāya and Āgama, karma was viewed as human action in the context of dependent co-arising (pratītya-samutpāda): the Buddhist concept of causal relationships. The Suttanipāta states as follows:

"Thus, the wise should truly know action. If they recognize the concept of dependent co-arising, then they will truly know [action and] its effect."43

The Buddha understood that life is suffering (duhkha); that suffering results from human action (karma) and that human action arises from ignorance (avidyā). The so-called 'twelve links' explained the causal chain of human action. That chain unfolds as follows: (1) ignorance (avidyā) is the state in which the Four Noble Truths are not comprehended. This state causes activity and the desire to live; (2) various human activities (samskāra), therefore, arise from ignorance; (3) human activities are, then, realized through one's consciousness (vijñāna). That is, one sees; hears; smells; tastes and touches and recognizes a thing. There are

43 Suttanipāta, 653.
various objects of one's consciousness; (4) these objects are manifested as both mental and material things (nāma-rūpa); (5) a certain object is, then, recognized through the six sense organs (sad-āyatanañi), i.e., eyes, ears, nose, tongue, body and mind; (6) this activity is specifically called 'contact' (sparśa) and, (7) evokes various feelings (vedanā), such as (8) craving (trṣṇā) and (9) attachment (upādāna); (10) attachment causes the desire for existence (bhava); (11) existence causes birth (jāti) and (12) birth causes suffering and suffering is represented by aging and death (jarā-marana).  

The Sarvāstivāda school applied dependent co-arising to the relationship between various dharmas and their effects. From this school's standpoint, a dharma comes into existence only momentarily and then ceases to exist; dharmas are impermanent and in a state of flux. Moreover, a dharma cannot occur by itself; a factor is necessary for it to arise and produce an effect. Thus, each dharma is always correlated to other dharmas in various ways and is, therefore, called 'conditioned (samskṛta) dharma'. The factor is classified into six types of causes (hetu) or four types of necessary preconditions (pratyaya). The effect (phala) is also classified into five types depending upon its

---

44 For example, SN, II, 1; 10; 25; 60; 79; 104; etc.
relationship with these causes or necessary preconditions. This is referred to as 'the theory of six causes, four necessary preconditions and five effects'.

Here, I would like to examine this complicated theory, particularly the relationship between the six types of causes and the five types of effects. The Sarvāstivāda first deals with the most pervasive causal relationship: the relationship between two or more dharmas. For example, there is a cup on a table. The table is considered the cause for the existence of the cup because the cup is held up by the table. That is, a dharma offers the medium for the existence of another dharma. Empirically, we see no causal relationship between these two objects. But, the table in this example, exemplifies the function of 'non-hindrance' (avighnabhāvāstha) by which the cup is allowed to exist. More generally, space may be considered the factor of non-hindrance for the existence of all conditioned dharmas. According to the MAS, for each conditioned dharma, all other conditioned dharmas are the cause. That is, one's body, speech or mind-action, as such, are conditioned

\[45\text{See AK, p. 82ff. See also David J. Kalupahana, Causality: The Central Philosophy of Buddhism, (Honolulu: The University Press of Hawaii, 1975), pp. 54-66; Alfonso Verdu, Early Buddhist Philosophy, (Delhi: Motolal Banarsidass, 1985), pp. 67-78.}\n
\[46\text{AK, p. 82.}\]
dhammas. They offer the medium for the existence of other conditioned dharmas or at least have the function of non-hindrance for the arising of them. Therefore, one's health or even living situation may be considered the effect of one's action. In this type of causal relationship, the cause is called 'kārana-hetu'; it literally means 'efficient cause'. Its effect is called 'adhipati-phala'; it literally means 'dominant effect'.

Second, it is commonly understood that a cause always precedes its effect. With respect to the Buddhist moral concept, mundane human action, the contaminated (sāsrava) dharma of unenlightened beings, is classified into three types: wholesome (kuśala), unwholesome (akuśala) and indeterminate (avyākṛta). The Sarvāstivādins proceed from the supposition that every action necessarily brings about a certain effect. For them, the effect evokes either pleasant (sukha) or painful (duḥkha) feelings, but is not morally qualified. However, they posit that an action is morally qualified by its effect: an action which brings about a pleasant effect must be wholesome; an action which brings about a painful effect must be unwholesome. It takes time,

47See NAS (Taisho, 28, 897B.20-898A.25).

48AK, p. 82.24ff; p. 94.21ff. See Verdu, pp. 72-73. He interprets kārana-hetu as 'la raison d'être' or the Aristotelian concept of 'efficient' or 'generative' cause; Hajime Sakurabe, Sonzai no bunseki, p. 64.
though, for an action to bring about (or mature) its effect. This type of cause is called 'maturation cause' (vipāka-hetu) and its effect 'maturation effect' (vipāka-phala). And because each action always precedes its effect, the action is regarded as maturation cause. The effect, i.e., either pleasant or painful feelings, is regarded as maturation effect. Some actions may not be strong enough to cause such pleasant or painful feelings. For example, artistic skills and habitual acts do not evoke powerful responses. Therefore, for the Sarvāstivādins, these actions are neither wholesome nor unwholesome. Such morally unqualified actions are called 'indeterminate (avyākṛta; action' and do not bring about maturation effect. The Buddhist moral concept will be further discussed in Section 3. It should be noted that a maturation cause brings about its effect only once. The effect never brings about another effect.49

Third, the uniformity and homogeneity between cause and its immediate effect is examined; the cause is known as 'sabhāga-hetu'; it literally means 'homogeneous cause'. Its effect is known as 'nīsyanda-phala'; it literally means 'down-flow effect'. The Sarvāstivāda understands that each

---

49AH (Taisho, 28, 815A.3-12); AHS (Taisho, 28, 843A.25ff); MAS (Taisho, 28, 897B.20ff); AK, p. 89.17ff; p. 95.9ff. See also Verdu, pp. 75-76; Sakurabe, pp. 65-66.
existent is composed of several dharmas and each dharma is a momentary event; every existent is in a state of flux. For example, one may have seen a cup on a table one hour ago and notice that the cup is still there. For the Sarvāstivādins, this seeming continuity is analyzed as the constant appearance of various dharmas of which the cup is composed. Therefore, the dharma (the cup) which existed one hour ago is different from the dharma (the cup) which exists in the present. But the dharma of cause and the resultant dharma are of the same specific nature, producing the appearance that the cup has remained as it was. This successive transmission of homogeneity in specific nature lasts until the cup is broken.\textsuperscript{50} As for human action, an unwholesome action of killing (homogeneous cause) may cause another unwholesome action, such as stealing (down-flow effect). Wholesome and indeterminate actions are explained likewise.

The same type of relationship is also found with respect to human passion (kleśa). In Buddhism, ignorance (avidyā) is understood as a primordial and general condition of causation: ignorance generates various passions. These passions always bring about passions of the same kind. Thus, each individual is pervaded with various passions generated by ignorance. These passions are, therefore, 

\textsuperscript{50}AK, p. 85.8ff. See also Verdu, pp.74-75.
called 'all-pervading cause' (sarvatraga-hetu). The existence of each individual is the effect in which passions of the same kind constantly arise. This effect is called 'nisvanda-phala' or 'down-flow effect'.

Fourth, it should be noted that a cause simultaneously brings about its effect: a cause and its effect are co-related. For example, one who is identified as a craftsman and his product are co-related. Neither can exist independently. Certainly the product cannot exist without its maker; at the same time, a maker without a product loses his identity. The production of the product itself is the cause for both these two constituent parts and is called 'mutual cause' (sahabhū-hetu). The craftsman's effort as well as his product are considered the effect (result) of his/her endeavor and is called 'effort effect' (puruṣakāra-phala).

Human action is, therefore, understood as effort effect for it appears in combination with one's mind, body and speech. That is, one's mind is always co-related with one's body and speech and is regarded as mutual cause.

This type of causal relationship is particularly found between one's mind and mental states. As mentioned before, one's mind cannot occur by itself; mental states are

51AK, p. 89.1ff. See also Verdu, p. 75; Sakurabe, pp. 66-67.

52Verdu, p.73; Sakurabe, pp.66-67.
necessary for it to arise and bring about effects. Thus, one's mind and mental states are always co-related. Their conjunctive state, the byproduct of which is mental activity, is considered the cause for these two constituent items. This state is specifically called 'conjunction cause' (samprayukta-hetu); its effect, i.e., mental activity is called 'effort effect'.

Finally, the state in which one acquires the right-view (satya-drsti) and is completely free from passions is called 'emancipated effect' (visamyoga-phala). Human action is classified into two types: (1) an action which is not affected by passion, i.e., 'uncontaminated (anäsrava) action' and (2) an action which is affected by passions, i.e., 'contaminated (säsrava) action'. When an uncontaminated action is performed in the state in which passions are abandoned (änantarya-märga), this action must be realized as emancipated effect. As for a contaminated action, when one enters the state in which passions are abandoned, that action may no longer be affected by passions and would also be realized as emancipated effect. This effect is realized only in the realm which is beyond any type of causal relationship of conditioned dharmas and, so is called an 'unconditioned (asamskrtä) dharma'.

\[53\]AK, p.88.15ff. See also Verdu, p. 74; Sakurabe, p. 66-67.
unconditioned dharma is the Buddhist final goal, namely Nirvāṇa.\textsuperscript{54}

In this way, for the Sarvāstivādins, each individual is regarded as an amalgamation of various conditioned dharmas: each individual exists by means of conditioned dharmas and is affected by various causal relationships. As for human action, it is commonly understood that a particular action necessarily brings about a particular effect. This relationship is sometimes misconstrued as being deterministic in the sense that everything one does is strictly governed by everything one did in the past. For the Sarvāstivādins, this is the relationship between maturation cause and maturation effect. They acknowledge that it is only one among many causal relationships. Each human existence is defined by a multitude of conditions, and it would be simplistic to see such an existence as determined.

\section*{B. Various Divisions of Action}

As we have seen, for the Sarvāstivādins, the relationship between a particular action and its effect is explained as the relationship between maturation cause and maturation effect. Within this causal relationship, the \textit{AH} and its commentaries attempt to classify human action into

\textsuperscript{54}AK, p. 86.1ff. See also Sakurabe, p. 72.
various categories.

One category is that of contaminated (sāsrava) action of unenlightened beings. It is classified into the following three types: (1) an action which brings about a pleasant effect (sukha-vedanīya-karma); (2) an action which brings about a painful effect (duhkha-vedanīya-karma) and (3) an action which brings about neither a pleasant nor painful effect (adukkhasukha-vedanīya-karma).55 As mentioned above, the Sarvāstivādins presuppose that every action necessarily brings about a certain effect. For them, the effect evokes either pleasant (sukha) or painful (dukhā) feelings, but the effect itself is not morally qualified. It is the action that is morally qualified by its effect and the action which is fundamentally classified into two types. That is, an action which brings about a pleasant effect must be wholesome; an action which brings about a painful effect must be unwholesome.

The third type of contaminated action evokes neither of the effects of the first two. In Buddhism, the cosmos is divided into the realm of desire (kāma-dhātu), the four stages of the realm of form (rūpa-dhātu) and the four stages of the realm of formlessness (ārūpya-dhātu). This division is not only a cosmological one but it also indicates various

55AH (Taisho, 28, 814B.15ff); AHS (Taisho, 28, 842B.23ff); MAS (Taisho, 28, 896A.8ff).
levels of consciousness. The altered states of consciousness result from Buddhist meditative practice (dhyāna). Buddhist meditative practice was neatly systematized by the Sarvāstivāda's Abhidharma works. According to them, in the first meditative state of the realm of form, unwholesome elements in one's mind are abandoned. In the fourth meditative state in the realm of form or states higher than that, the feeling of pleasure or pain is abandoned. Thus, if one performs a wholesome action while being in such states, the effect would evoke the feeling of neither pleasure nor pain. The action is, therefore, referred to as 'an action which brings about neither a pleasant nor painful effect'.

A second category is the four-fold division of actions found in the Nikāya and Agama which is adopted by the Sarvāstivāda: (1) 'black action bringing about black effect (kṛṣṇa-kṛṣṇa-vipāka-karma); (2) 'white action bringing about white effect' (śukla-śukla-vipāka-karma); (3) either black or white action bringing about either black or white effect (kṛṣṇa-śukla-kṛṣṇa-śukla-vipāka-karma) and (4) neither black nor white action bringing about neither black nor white effect (akṛṣṇa-śuklā-vipāka-karma). As mentioned above, (1993).

---

56 For example, the eighth chapter of the AK fully devotes itself to the discussion on the altered states of consciousness.

57 For example, AN, II, 230; DN, III, 230.
contaminated action of unenlightened beings is fundamentally classified into two types: unwholesome or wholesome. The term 'black' represents unwholesome dharmas which are contaminated by passions. That is, one's volition which is associated with other essentially unwholesome mental states is considered unwholesome (black) and generates unwholesome body and speech-actions. Thus, unwholesome actions bring about painful (black) effect. This process will be discussed in detail in Section 3. In the same way, the term 'white' represents those wholesome actions in the realm of form; wholesome actions bring about pleasant (white) effects. Mundane human action in the realm of desire is regarded not as an individual act, but as the series of acts which define an individual life. Because one's volition in this realm is affected by both essentially unwholesome and wholesome dharmas, some actions are wholesome and others are unwholesome. Thus, the term 'either black or white' represents mundane human existence.

Uncontaminated (anāsrava) action is realized in the state in which human passions are completely abandoned; it

\[58\text{AH (Taisho, 28, 814C.9-11); AHS (Taisho, 28, 842C.18-21); MAS (Taisho, 28, 896B.21-24).}\]

\[59\text{AH (Taisho, 28, 814C.5-7); AHS (Taisho, 28, 842C.14-15); MAS (Taisho, 28, 896B.14-15).}\]

\[60\text{AH (Taisho, 28, 814C.7-9); AHS (Taisho, 28, 842C.15-19); MAS (Taisho, 28, 896B.19-20).}\]
is ultimately wholesome, i.e., never 'black'. The only realm in which such action occurs is one which is beyond any type of causal relationship. In other words, uncontaminated action transcends the world of transmigration (samsāra) and brings about about no effects whatsoever. That is, even wholesome, i.e., white actions are without effect. This action is, therefore, referred to as 'neither black nor white action bringing about neither black nor white effect'. 61 This non-causal action is Nirvāṇa.

A third category is one which defines action by its retribution. As understood previously, an action necessarily brings about its effect. As for some actions, we are certain as to when their effects will occur. These actions are classified into the following three types: (1) an action is performed in this life and its effect is also realized in this life (drsta-dharma-vedanīya-karma); (2) the effect of an action is not realized in this life, but will be realized in one's next life (upapadya-vedanīya-karma) and (3) the effect of an action is not realized even in one's second life, but will be realized after one's second life (aparaparyāya-vedanīya-karma). 62 The second and third types

61 AH (Taisho, 28, 814C.12-18); AHS (Taisho, 28, 842C.21-3); MAS (Taisho, 28, 896B.25-C.9).

62 AH (Taisho, 28, 814B.13-15); AHC (Taisho, 28, 842B.15-21); MAS (Taisho, 28, 896C.14-896A.8)
of action have ethical implications. They act as the cause for defining a specific type of sentient being in one's future life. As for other actions, however, we are uncertain as to when their effects will occur and even whether or not their effects will occur at all. For the Sarvāstivādins, this type of action has soteriological implications. That is, an unwholesome action necessarily brings about a painful effect, but a practice, such as faithfully following the Buddhist precepts may, prevent the painful effect from occurring.63

---

63MĀS (Taisho, 28, 895C.21-22)
3. Karma as a Buddhist Ethical Concept

A. Wholesome, Unwholesome and Indeterminate

The Sarvāstivāda school classifies human action into the following three categories: wholesome (kusāla), unwholesome (akusāla) and indeterminate (avyākṛta). These three types of action provide them with a moral standard and have soteriological implications.

We must return to the Sarvāstivāda's dharma-discourse in order to investigate their moral standard in detail. They categorize various dharmas in order to describe the relationship between an individual and his/her world. The following chart gives the clarification of dharmas by which a moral code is recognized:

1. Uncontaminated--Ultimately Wholesome--(Nirvāṇa)

Dharmas

2. Contaminated--Ultimately Unwholesome--(Samsāra)

(A) Wholesome--Pleasant Effect
(B) Unwholesome--Painful Effect
(C) Indeterminate

The Sarvāstivāda, first and fundamentally, employs the classification of dharmas into 'uncontaminated' (anāśrava)
and 'contaminated' (sāsrava). Uncontaminated indicates a dharma which is no longer (nor ever was) contaminated by passions (kleśa). The truth of the path (mārga-satya) and unconditioned (asamskṛta) dharmas, such as space (ākāśa), cessation through realization (pratisamkhyā-nirodhā) and cessation not through realization (apratisamkhyā-nirodhā) are regarded as uncontaminated dharmas. In other words, all dharmas which enable one to attain Nirvāṇa are regarded as uncontaminated dharmas and are ultimately wholesome (paramārtha-śubha). Contaminated, on the other hand, indicates a dharma which is contaminated by passions. In other words, all conditioned (samskṛta) dharmas which adhere to passions should be regarded as contaminated dharmas and are ultimately unwholesome (paramārtha-akuśala).

In this way, one enters the path (mārga), eliminates human passions (kleśa) and attains the uncontaminated dharma which enables one to realize Nirvāṇa. An action performed in this realm, i.e., the realm of no-further learning (aśaikṣa) is called uncontaminated action and is considered ultimately wholesome (paramārtha-śubha). Mundane human action, on the

---

64 AH (Taisho, 28, 809B); AHS (Taisho, 28, 834A-C); MAS (Taisho, 28, 874C); AK, p. 202 and so on.

65 AH (Taisho, 28, 809B); AHS (Taisho, 28, 834A-C); MAS (Taisho, 28, 874C); AK, p. 202 and so on.

66 ibid.
other hand, is always contaminated by passions within the world of transmigration (samsāra). It is, therefore, called contaminated action and is considered ultimately unwholesome (paramārtha-akuśala). 67

Then, as mentioned in Section 2-A, mundane human action, which is contaminated dharma of unenlightened beings, is further classified into wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate. It is commonly understood that every action necessarily brings about a certain effect; the effect evokes either pleasant (sukha) or painful (duhkha) feelings. 68 For the Sarvāstivāda, an action which brings about a pleasant effect must be wholesome; an action which brings about a painful effect must be unwholesome. Some actions are, however, neither wholesome nor unwholesome. For example, one's habitual actions or artistic skills cannot be morally qualified and so, are indeterminate. These actions, though, also have effects. They are called 'indeterminate action'.

As we understood in Section 1-B, body-action is a dharma of shape and speech-action is a dharma of sound; both are included in the category of material form (rūpa). According to the Sarvāstivāda's theory, only mental

67 Hajime Sakurabe, Sonzai no bunseki, pp.109-114.

68 AH (Taisho, 28, 814B); AHS (Taisho, 28, 842B-C); MAS (Taisho, 28, 896A-B); AK p. 228 and so on.
dharmaś can be morally qualified. However, the two material dharmas are exceptions because they always occur based on one's mind. Therefore, in the AH, Dharmaśri explains thus:

Wholesome body and speech-actions arise from a wholesome mind (kuśala-citta); unwholesome body and speech-actions arise from an unwholesome mind (akuśala-citta), and indeterminate body and speech-actions arise from an indeterminate mind (avyākṛta-citta). Likewise, as for mind-action, one's volition (cetanā) accompanied by a wholesome mind causes wholesome mind-actions; one's volition accompanied by an unwholesome mind causes unwholesome mind-actions, and one's volition accompanied by an indeterminate mind causes indeterminate mind-actions.69

The analogy between mind-action and body and speech-actions may be reasonable, but how is one's mind morally qualified?

The MAS classifies wholesome and unwholesome dharmas into three categories. First, it enumerates the five dharmas that are by their very nature wholesome (svabhāva-kuśala): such mental states as (1) modesty (hṛi); (2) shame (apatrāpya); (3) non-greed (alobha); (4) non-anger (advesa) and (5) non-delusion (amoha). These five types of mental states are essentially wholesome. The following five dharmas are, on the other hand, by their very nature unwholesome (svabhāva-akuśala): (1) immmodesty (ahṛi); (2) shamelessness (anapatrāpya); (3) greed (lobha); (4) anger (dvēsa) and (5)

69AH (Taisho, 28, 812C).
delusion (moha). These five human passions (kleśa) are essentially unwholesome.\textsuperscript{70}

Second, the MAS establishes a category, i.e., "dharmas which are associated with these five either essentially wholesome or unwholesome dharmas (samprayoga-kuśala or samprayoga-akuśala)."\textsuperscript{71} This category concerns one's mind and mental states. As we understood in Section 1-B, one's mind is a dharma and cannot occur by itself. Some factor is necessary for it to arise and produce an effect. This factor is one of various mental states (caitta). One's mind-action is, therefore, included in this category. That is, if one's mind-action, as a mental state of volition (cetanā), is associated with the five essentially wholesome dharmas, one's mind-action must be wholesome. Likewise, if one's volition is associated with the five essentially unwholesome dharmas, one's mind-action must be unwholesome. One's mind-action which concerns neither these five essentially wholesome nor unwholesome dharmas is considered indeterminate mind-action. In this manner, one's mind-action is morally qualified.

Third, the MAS enumerates "dharmas which arise from or are accompanied by dharmas of the second category

\textsuperscript{70}MAS (Taisho, 28, 874B-C).

\textsuperscript{71}ibid.
Body, speech-actions and some dharmas which are dissociated from the mind (cittaviprayuktasamskāra-dharma) are included in this category. That is, if a body-action arises from one's volition accompanied by any one of the five essentially wholesome dharmas, this body-action must be wholesome. Likewise, if a body-action arises from one's volition accompanied by any one of the five essentially unwholesome dharmas, this body-action must be unwholesome. If a body-action arises from one's volition which concerns neither these five essentially wholesome nor unwholesome dharmas, this body-action is considered to be indeterminate.

Unmanifested action is also included in the third category. As explained in Section 1-C, unmanifested action is produced by intentionally wholesome or unwholesome actions, then, effects the future performance of wholesome or unwholesome actions. Unmanifested action, therefore, must be either wholesome or unwholesome. Indeterminate action, void of intention, is not related to unmanifested action. As with body and speech-actions, unmanifested action also arises from one's mind associated with either the five essentially wholesome or unwholesome dharmas.

In this way, by the conjunction of one's purely mental

\[72\text{MAS (Taisho, 28, 874B-C).}\]
activity, i.e., volition (cetanā) with those five essentially wholesome or unwholesome dharmas, human action is morally qualified. The process of evolution of one's mental activity (hetu-samutthāna) always precedes the realization of the action itself. The mental activity continues while the action is actually performed (ksana-samutthāna).  

The Sarvāsitvāda's texts, however, provide no explanation as to how these dharmas are qualified to be essentially wholesome or unwholesome. We can assume that they merely adopted the view of the Nikāya and Agama in which greed, anger and delusion are considered the three unwholesome roots (akusala-mūla). The term 'delusion' (moha) is sometimes supplanted by such terms as 'ignorance' (avidyā) and 'wrong-view' (mithyādrsti). All three terms indicate ignorance toward the truth. Ignorance may, then, give rise to passionate desires: the mental state of greed indicates one's attachment toward a desirable object and the mental state of anger indicates one's aversion toward an undesirable object. As emotional reactions to one's situation, greed and anger are considered the root causes of human defilement. Delusion causes various passions, and so

---

73 MAS (Taisho, 28, 896C-897A).
74 MN, I, 47; SN, I, 70; 90 and so on.
is included in the category of 'mental states accompanied by great passions' (kleśamahābhūmika). Such mental states as immodesty (anapatrápya) and shamelessness (āhrīkya) are understood as a situation in which one is unaware of one's own wrong doing. These two mental states also promote unwholesome actions, and so are included in the category of 'essentially unwholesome mental states' (akusala-mahābhūmika).

Though these five dhammas are included in the category of mental states, their essential character is considered to be human passion (kleśa). In Buddhism, human passion (sometimes supplanted by 'proclivity' or anuśaya) always has a negative connotation; one never has passions or proclivities which promote wholesome actions, only unwholesome ones. Therefore, Dharmaśrī begins the fourth chapter (Anuśaya-varga) of the AH by stating: "proclivities are the root of all existence, are accompanied by actions and give rise to the human predicament." That chapter, then, is devoted to a discussion of various proclivities.

76ibíd.
77Griffiths, Indian Buddhist Meditation-Theory, p, 269.
78AH (Taisho, 28, 815B).
their effects on the Buddhist practitioners' attainment of enlightenment and the emancipation, i.e., Nirvāṇa, in which these proclivities are eradicated. In this way, the five dharmas that represent the whole of human proclivities are considered to be essentially unwholesome and morally affect other dharmas.79

The five essentially wholesome dharmas, on the other hand, represent mental states which are void of proclivities. The mental state without delusion indicates one's right-view (samyag-dṛṣṭi) toward the truth. This mental state is the basis for various wholesome mental states, and so is included in the category of 'fundamental mental states' (mahābhūmika).80 This right-view, then, gives rise to the mental state without greed and the mental state without anger. For this reason, these two mental states based on right-view are, therefore, included in the category of 'essentially wholesome mental states' (kuśalamahābhūmika).81 These three, i.e., non-greed (ālobha), non-anger (advesa) and their basis, non-delusion (āmoha) or right-view, are considered the root causes for the purification of human

79 Sakurabe, pp.109-114.
81 ibid.
existence. Such dharmas as modesty (hrī) and shame (apatrāpya) are explained as mental situations in which one is aware of one's wrong doing. These two prevent one from performing unwholesome actions and are included in the same category, i.e., 'essentially wholesome mental states'.

One must keep in mind, though, the relative nature of this code. That is, this moral standard applies only to the contaminated actions of unenlightened beings. If an action of an ordinary individual is determined as wholesome, this action, as such, is a contaminated dharma and is ultimately unwholesome. In other words, in Buddhism, human existence is, by nature, unwholesome. Various forms of practice have arisen in response to this doctrine, by which one may advance to higher states, gradually eliminate unwholesome elements and eventually attain the Buddhist final goal, the state of Nirvāṇa, whereby ultimately wholesome action can be performed.

B. The Morally Potent Element: Samvara and Asamvara

As understood in Section 1, an unseen, latent power (avijñāpti) is produced by intentionally wholesome or

unwholesome actions and it, in turn, effects the nature of subsequent actions. For the Sarvāstivāda, this unseen, latent power is considered to be more specifically the foundation for their Buddhist code of monastic discipline and system of meditative practice. It is in this context that the term 'samvara' or 'asamvara' is used in the Sarvāstivāda's texts. Samvara literally means restraint, and is, therefore, considered to be avijñapti which acts as the potential to perform wholesome actions. It is produced by adhering to the Buddhist precepts and attaining meditative practices. Asamvara is the antonym of samvara produced by adding the negative prefix 'a'. It is also considered to be avijñapti which acts as the potential to perform unwholesome actions. It is produced by habitually performing extremely unwholesome actions. There is a third type of avijñapti that acts as the potential to perform either wholesome or unwholesome actions. It is produced by neither of the above two causes. This type of potential is called 'naiva-samvara-āsamvara'.

First, samvara is further classified into the following three types: (1) Prātimokṣa-samvara; (2) Dhyāna-samvara and (3) Anāsrava-samvara.

---

83 Edgerton, Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Dictionary, pp.539-540.

84 See AK, p. 205.
Normally, the term 'prātimokṣa' refers to the code of precepts in the Vinaya by which monks are controlled. However, in this case, prātimokṣa refers to the Buddhist precepts (śīla) in general. Prātimokṣa-samvara is, therefore, the potential to perform wholesome actions which is specifically produced by following the Buddhist precepts. This potential concerns only Buddhists. The MAS classifies Buddhists into the following seven types: (1) monks (bhikṣu); (2) nuns (bhikṣunī); (3) those nuns in the probational state (śikṣamāṇā); (4) male novices (śrāmanera); (5) female novices (śrāmanerikā); (6) laymen (upāsaka) and (7) lay-women (upāsikā). For each type of Buddhist, specific precepts are established.

In order to become any type of Buddhist, participation in an ordainment ceremony is required. For one who aspires to become a monk, an ordainment ceremony is administered by the Buddhist community; for one aspiring to become any other type of Buddhist, the ceremony is held by an elder monk. At any ordainment ceremony, the aspirant has to perform certain forms of manifested body and speech-actions. For example, one performs the manifested body-action of bowing

---

85 Edgerton, p. 391.
86 MAS (Taisho, 28, 890C).
87 ibid.
to the monk who will become his/her master. The manifested speech-action of making an oath that he/she will follow the Buddhist precepts for his/her entire life is also performed. Through performing these manifested actions, the initial potential to perform wholesome actions is produced. From that time on, the potential is maintained through following the Buddhist precepts. Prātimokṣa-samvara may be maintained until one dies except in the following cases: when one purposely abandons the Buddhist precepts and when one, under certain conditions and through no intent of his/her own, is no longer able to follow those precepts.\footnote{88}

Another type of Prātimokṣa-samvara is produced by lay-people who observe the special eight precepts for an entire day (upavāsa-samvara). This type of potential is maintained only for that day.\footnote{89}

Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara concern only Buddhist monks. As understood in Section 1-C, an unseen, latent power or potential, namely avijñapti, is produced by

\footnote{88}AH (Taisho, 28, 814A); AHS (Taisho, 28, 841C); MAS (Taisho, 28, 892B); AK, p.222 and so on. Each text presents various reasons for one who is no longer able to follow the Buddhist precepts. For example, AH gives the following the three reasons: (1) when one commits an deadly sin; (2) when one becomes a hermaphrodite and (3) when the Dharma disappearc. See also, Wataru Ryose, "Betsugedaturitsuigi no sha (Some Notes on The Termination of Prātimokṣa-samvara)", Indo-gaku Bukkyōgaku Kenkyū, 34-2, (March, 1986), pp.301-303.

\footnote{89}AK (p. 206.22ff) describes 'upavāsatha' in a detailed way.
manifested actions. These two types of avijñapti are, however, produced by purely mental activity, namely meditation (dhyāna or samādhi). When a monk achieves a meditative state in the realm of form, he can acquire the potential to perform wholesome actions; this potential is called Dhyāna-samvara. When a monk who has already achieved the sacred path, such as an Arhat, attains a completely uncontaminated meditative state, he can also acquire the potential to perform wholesome actions; this potential is called Anāsrava-samvara. These two potentials are maintained only while the monk is involved in the meditative state.\(^{90}\)

However, meditative states are void of body and speech-actions. That is, no manifested actions are performed. This actionless state has no effect on the performance of subsequent actions. For the Sarvāstivādins, therefore, these two potentials, Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara, are established as hypothetical entities in order to substantiate the importance of meditative practice. They then claim that hypothetically a meditative state, as purely mental activity, could produce the potential to perform wholesome actions (samvara) in the same manner as the other Buddhist precepts.\(^{91}\)

\(^{90}\)AH (Taisho, 28, 813A); AHS (Taisho, 28, 840C); MAS (Taisho, 28, 889B); AK, p. 208 and so on.

Second, *asamvara*, which is *avijñapti* acting as the potential to perform unwholesome actions, is produced by habitual and extremely unwholesome actions. For example, when one is born into a family which habitually performs extremely unwholesome actions, such as killing animals, he/she, due to this exposure, may tend to carry on this tradition; thus, perpetuating the potential to perform unwholesome actions. If and when he/she makes the choice to carry out the unwholesome action, the potential is then realized. Also, when one expresses his/her intention to perform an extremely unwholesome action, such as thievery as an occupation, the potential to perform unwholesome actions is produced. This potential is continuously produced and may be maintained until he/she dies.\(^92\)

However, this potential can be terminated by producing *samvara*. That is, if one becomes a Buddhist and follows the Buddhist precepts or attains a meditative state, he/she can terminate the potential to perform unwholesome actions.\(^93\) In this way, for the Sarvāstivādins, *samvara* offers a means of obliterating those habitual and extremely unwholesome

\(^{92}\)AH (Taisho, 28, 813C); AHS (Taisho, 28, 841B); MAS (Taisho, 28, 891C-892A); AK, p.209 and so on.

\(^{93}\)See for example AH (Taisho, 28, 814A); MAS (Taisho, 28, 892B-C); AK, p.225 and so on. MAS and AK give another case by which *asamvara* is terminated: when one becomes a hermaphrodite.
actions which divert from the Buddhist precepts. They underscore the significance of becoming a Buddhist by proposing that solely by the Buddhist precepts and meditative practices can one terminate this unwholesome potential, namely asamvara.

Third, the Sarvāstivādins establish naiva-samvara-nāsamvara meaning 'neither samvara nor asamvara'. In Chinese, it is most often translated as 'intermediate' (ch'u-chung).\[^{94}\] As mentioned before, samvara is produced by following the Buddhist precepts or by attaining a meditative state. This intermediate avijñāpti has the function of samvara, but is not produced by the above-mentioned factors. That is, this potential to perform wholesome actions is produced by those wholesome actions which are not included in the Buddhist practices.\[^{95}\] In other words, by establishing this type of avijñāpti, the Sarvāstivādins attempt to extend the function of samvara outside of the Buddhist community. This intermediate avijñāpti also has the function of asamvara, but is not produced by habitual and extremely unwholesome actions. That is, this potential to perform unwholesome actions is produced by sudden (but still

\[^{94}\] Naiva-samvara-nāsamvara' is usually translated into the Chinese term, 'ch'u-chung', meaning 'intermediate'. For example, AH (Taisho, 28, 813C); MAS (Taisho, 28, 890C); AK (Taisho, 29, 80A) and so on.

\[^{95}\] MAS (Taisho, 28, 890A; 892C).
intentionally) unwholesome actions.\textsuperscript{96}

However, the Sarvāstivāda's texts, especially the AH and its commentaries, expend little energy explaining the intermediate avijñāpti. It is dealt with as an item incidental to samvara and asamvara in the Karma-chapter.\textsuperscript{97} In that chapter, they focus on samvara as their means of emphasizing the significance of the Buddhist precepts and meditation from which all Buddhists may benefit.

C. Ten Courses of Action (Karmacatha)

As we have seen in Section A, the three types of action, i.e., wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate, provide us with a moral standard and have soteriological implications. Another important moral standard is found in the Nikāya and Āgama, which enumerates the following ten types of unwholesome action:

(1) killing (praṇātipāta);
(2) theft (adattādāna);
(3) sexual misconduct (mithyācāra);

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{96} \textbf{MAS} (Taisho, 28, 890A; 892C).
\item \textsuperscript{97} \textbf{AH} (Taisho, 28, 813C); \textbf{AHS} (Taisho, 28, 841B); \textbf{MAS} (Taisho, 28, 890A; 892C).
\end{itemize}
(4) telling lies (mrsavāda);
(5) malicious words (paiśunya);
(6) harsh words (parusa);
(7) senseless talk (sambhinnapralāpa);
(8) greed (abhidhyā);
(9) anger (vyāpadā) and
(10) wrong-view (mithyādrsti).

Killing, theft and sexual misconduct represent unwholesome body-actions; telling lies, malicious words, harsh words and senseless talk represent unwholesome speech-actions, and greed, anger and wrong-view represent unwholesome mind-actions. The ten types of wholesome action, on the other hand, consist of eliminating each one of these ten unwholesome actions.\(^{98}\) Such sets of good and evil acts are also found in non-Buddhist literature, such as the Mahābhārata and The Laws of Manu,\(^{99}\) reflecting a moral standard generally accepted in Indian society in that period. The Sarvāstivādins also adopted this code in order to provide their own community with concrete and unambiguous ethical guidelines.

\(^{98}\)For example, DN, vol.III, 269.

These ten types of action (both wholesome and unwholesome) are usually referred to as the 'ten courses of action' (dasa kammapathā) in the Nikāya and Āgama. These actions are meant to be representative of wholesome and unwholesome actions. Therefore, they are extreme in relation to other human actions. In the Sarvāstivāda's texts, the term 'ten courses of action' (daśa karmapatha) is also employed, but with particular implications.

First, the term 'course of action' is used in order to emphasize the relationship between one's mind-action and wholesome or unwholesome mental states. As mentioned before, for the Sarvāstivādins mind-action indicates one's volition (cetanā). The three items enumerated as mind-actions, i.e., greed, anger and wrong-view, are not actually mind-action, but are mental states (caitta). However, when one's volition, i.e., mind-action, is accompanied by each one of these three mental states, that unwholesome mind-action then causes unwholesome body and speech-actions. The AH, therefore, states thus: "Each one of these three mental states provides the circumstances for the course (patha) of the ten types of unwholesome action."\(^{100}\) That is, these three types of mental states provide the circumstances for the course by which one's unwholesome mind-action

\(^{100}\text{AH (Taisho, 28, 814B).}\)
arises. For the Sarvāstivādins, 'greed', considered to be mind-action, actually means one's volition (mind-action) accompanied by an unwholesome mental state of greed. This unwholesome mind-action, then, also provides the circumstances for the course by which unwholesome body and speech-actions arise. In the Sarvāstivāda's texts, the term 'course of action' (karmapatha) is specifically reserved for this process of evolution of an unwholesome action. The ten courses of wholesome action are explained in the same manner.

Second, the term 'course of action' is also established as a means to explain an action itself. In the Sarvāstivāda's texts, the process of performing a body or speech-action is explained in the following three states: (1) the state of preparation for performing an action (prayoga); (2) the state of carrying out an action (maula karmapatha) and (3) the state of result after performing an action (prsthā). For example, the MAS explains thus:

"The state of preparation for performing such an act as killing occurs when, for example, a sheep-farmer either captures or buys a sheep, brings it home and hits it once or twice in order to kill it. The state of preparation (prayoga) lasts from the time he gets the sheep until the sheep's life is extinguished.

At the moment when the sheep-farmer terminates the life of the sheep, manifested and unmanifested actions are produced. The action at that moment is called 'the state of carrying out an action' (maula-karmaptha)."
By carrying out the action of killing, an unwholesome body-action has been performed and it produces unmanifested action... This state is called 'the result of carrying out an action' (prsthā)."101

The term 'course of action' is, then, applied only to the state of carrying out each body or speech-action. For example, killing, which is included in the ten courses of unwholesome action, refers to the specific moment when one terminates the life of an animal or a person. At that moment, this intentionally unwholesome body-action produces an unseen latent power (avijñapti) which influences the performance of future wholesome or unwholesome actions. Other body and speech-actions are explained likewise. As for mind-action, whenever one's volition is accompanied by a mental state, such as greed, this is regarded as the state of carrying out a mind-action. Neither the state of preparation nor the state of result exists for a mind-action. Mind-action is peculiar in this way.102

It should be noted again that according to the Sarvāstivāda's theory, one's mind-action is unrelated to unmanifested (avijñapti) action. However, the MAS does cite an exception: person A is quite intent upon killing a certain person. Person A asks person B to carry out the

---

101 MAS (Taisho, 28, 894B).

102 McDermott, Development in Early Buddhist Concept of Kamma/Karma, pp.141-143.
deed, which person B does. The moment at which the life of that person is terminated is referred to as the 'course of an unwholesome action of killing'. In this case, for the Sarvāstivādins, person A is considered to be the culprit, not person B, for person B is simply the agent of person A's purpose. Therefore, though the manifested (vijñāpti) action of killing is realized by person B, the unmanifested (avijñāpti) action of killing is incurred by person A. This unmanifested action, then, effects the future actions of person A, not person B. In this way, for the Sarvāstivādins, intent is crucial to implicate an individual ethically. Premeditation is the active ingredient in the preparatory stage of an action. Other body and speech-actions are explained likewise. Sexual misconduct is an except to this; that action cannot be carried out by someone else.\footnote{MAS \(28, 895a\); AK, P. 196.}

The ten courses of wholesome action are defined as the elimination of each one of these ten courses of unwholesome action. One's unwholesome mind-action can be transformed into a wholesome mind-action by such mental states as non-greed, non-anger and right-view, which can be generated by Buddhist meditation. Then, unwholesome body and speech-actions can be eliminated based upon the wholesome mind-action. The elimination of these unwholesome actions is also
prescribed in the Buddhist precepts. So, by following the Buddhist precepts and practicing Buddhist meditation, one may accomplish the ten courses of wholesome action.\textsuperscript{104}

As we have seen in Section A, in the Nikāya and Āgama such human passions as greed, anger and delusion are regarded as the fundamental causes for various unwholesome dharmas and are called the 'three unwholesome roots' (tīni akuśalamūlāni). Such mental states as non-greed (alobha), non-anger (advesa) and non-delusion (amoha) are, on the other hand, regarded as the fundamental causes for various wholesome dharmas and are called the 'three wholesome roots' (tīni kuśalamūlāni).\textsuperscript{105} The ten courses of unwholesome and wholesome action are, then, attributed to these three unwholesome and wholesome roots in the Sarvāstivāda's texts.

For example, the MAS explains the relationship between the three unwholesome roots and the ten courses of unwholesome action in a more analytical way. First, the passion of anger (dvesa) occurs only among sentient beings. One's mind-action accompanied by the mental state of anger evokes an angry feeling toward other sentient beings. An unwholesome speech-action of harsh words arises from this unwholesome mind-action. This mind-action may be strong

---

\textsuperscript{104}MAS (Taisho, 28, 895A); AK, P. 196.

\textsuperscript{105}For example, DN. III, 214; 275; AN. V, 261 and so on.
enough to induce the killing of a sentient being. Second, the passion of greed (lobha) occurs with respect to material objects. One's unwholesome mind-action accompanied by the mental state of greed induces attachment to a desired object. An act of theft may arise from this unwholesome mind-action. Sexual misconduct also occurs with respect to material objects. This act may arise from a mind-action, i.e., sexual desire, which induces attachment to a desired object, i.e., the human body. Third, all three passions, i.e., greed, anger and delusion (moha) occur with respect to various mental factors. Speech-actions such as telling lies, malicious words and senseless talk arise from the combination of these three unwholesome roots and are performed as the result of various mental states. Finally, the passion of delusion causes misconceptions. One's mind-action accompanied by the mental state of wrong-view is, therefore, recognized as a hindrance to the understanding of truth. It is a fundamental cause for various unwholesome dharmas, both material and mental.\textsuperscript{106}

Thus, these three unwholesome roots are explained as the state of preparation (pravoga) for the ten courses of unwholesome action. The three wholesome roots are, on the other hand, explained as the state of preparation for the

\textsuperscript{106}MAS (Taisho, 28, 893C.12-894A.6).
ten courses of wholesome action. ¹⁰⁷

¹⁰⁷ MAS (Taisho, 28, 893C.12-894A.6).
4. Conclusion

We have examined karma's three major functions found in the AH and its commentaries. The first function was articulated by Dharmaśrī, stating: Human action (karma) colors the world with suffering, but by the investigation of human action one may find the way to seek release (nirvāṇa) from the world of transmigration (samsāra).\(^\text{108}\) In the AH, the investigation of human action is initiated by the investigation of dharmas. 'Abhidharma,' as the term indicates, is the observational analysis and categorization of existents, i.e., dharmas. Human action is, therefore, classified into the three fundamental existents: (1) body-action as a dharma of form (rūpa); (2) speech-action as a dharma of sound (śabda) and (3) mind-action as a dharma of mental state of volition (cetanā). This volition always stimulates body and speech-action. Even an unseen, potent element which remains after performing an action is categorized as a possible existent of form. This is the Sarvāstivāda's unique conception of karma and is called 'unmanifested action' (avijñāpti-karma).

The second function was explained in the MAS in a detailed way. In the MAS, each individual is regarded as the
amalgamation of various conditioned dharmas and is affected by various causal relationships. These causal relationships are established as the theory of 'the causal relationship between six types of causes and five types of effects'. This theory represents the Sarvāstivāda's interpretation of dependent co-arising (pratītyasamutpāda) and was further developed in later works of this school. However, it does not mitigate the all-pervasive suffering of mankind.

Rather, that theory has ethical implications which act as karma's third function. The function was found in the relationship between maturation cause and maturation effect. The Sarvāstivāda understands that one's mental activity, i.e., volition, always precedes the realization of an action and continues while the action is performed. Human action is morally qualified depending on how his/her volition is associated with essentially wholesome or unwholesome dharmas. Thus, one's painful or pleasant life (maturation effect) reflects the state of one's mind (maturation cause). Here, we can see that Buddhist concept of karma has soteriological implications.

Karma's third function was specifically emphasized by the Buddhist precepts: the means of controlling human behavior. The unseen, potent element which effects one's performance of future wholesome actions (samvara) is attained only through following the Buddhist precepts and
meditative practice. Likewise, the non-causal state whereby ultimately wholesome action can be performed, i.e., nirvāṇa, is also realized only through the Buddhist practices. Therefore, the AH and its commentaries hold the destruction of the Buddhist community, the perpetrator of Buddhist practices, as one of the gravest sins.109

The Sarvāstivādins, armed with their analytical theory, do not appear particularly compassionate toward the human condition. The alleviation of human sufferings seems to be secondary to their concern for the sustenance of the Buddhist community and the practices followed therein. Karma is wielded as an ethical tool, a moral stick to admonish practitioners to follow the Buddhist precepts. Nevertheless, as the prescribed practices are considered the only means to reach nirvāṇa, without them sentient beings would be eternally doomed. In fact, the Sarvāstivāda's concept of karma is not pessimistic nor deterministic. It hinges on volition, the necessary condition for human action. Volition, here, is an expression of free will (or the manifestation of it) and by 'will' man may free himself from the chains of samsāra and enter the non-causal and effectless, i.e., 'karmaless' realm.

109AH (Taisho, 28, 815A.28ff); AHS (Taisho, 28, 843C.8ff); MAS (Taisho, 28, 898C.18ff).
PART TWO

AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF KARMA-VARGA
Preface to the Translation

A: An Interpretative Survey of the Karma Section in the
Abhidharmaahrdaya

The concept of karma has always been a central issue in the history of Buddhist thought. It has been developed in many Sarvastivāda Abhidharma texts. Dharmārī in the ĀH was the first to devote one chapter solely to the subject 'karma'. His exposition is one of the greatest achievements in the history of the Sarvastivāda school.

It is in the third chapter (Karma-varga) of the ĀH that Dharmārī deals with karma. This chapter is comprised of 32 sections of verse (kārikā) and an explanation in prose (bhāṣya). Here, Dharmārī's intention is to present karma's three major functions in Buddhism: (1) karma (human action) as an intentional act (cetanā) which establishes the multifarious states and conditions of sentient beings; (2) karma as a description of human action from the perspective of the Buddhist concept of dependent co-arising (pratītya-samutpāda): the relationship between the human action (karma) and its effect (karma-vipāka) and (3) karma as a Buddhist ethical concept, that is, as a means of social control in the Buddhist community, particularly among Buddhist monks.
The first function is dealt with in Kārikā 1-3. There, karma refers specifically to human action and its effects. The world is created by the human action (Kārikā 1) which is classified into three types: body-action (kāya-karma), speech-action (vāk-karma) and mind-action (manas-karma) (Kārikā 2). Mind-action is regarded as a subtle series of intentional impulses (cetanā) (Kārikā 3). These actions are further classified into two: manifested (vijñāpti) and unmanifested (avijñāpti) actions. (Kārikā 3). In Kārikā 4-7, human action is classified into three types from the viewpoint of Buddhist ethics: wholesome (kušíala), unwholesome (akušíala) and indetcrminate (avākṛta) actions. Dharmaśrī concludes that all these actions are co-related to one's mind.

The second function of karma is dealt with in several places. The relationship between various actions and their retributions is dealt with in Kārikā 22-28. Kārikā 29-30 states the concept of karma with reference to the principle of cause and effect.

The third function, perhaps the most important for Buddhist practitioners, is explained in two ways. First, Dharmaśrī establishes the concept of avijñāpti-karma; meaning an unmanifest faculty of human action which is morally potent. This avijñāpti-karma is regarded as a potential to perform good actions (samvara) acquired through
Buddhist practice. This is one of the most important issues dealt with in the AH. Kārikā 8-19 deals with this samvara together with asamvara (the potential to perform bad actions) and the morally intermediate state. Second, ten kinds of unwholesome actions which have a strong potential power to cause unwholesome effects, are listed. These actions are specifically called the 'ten courses of unwholesome action' (Kārikā 21). Three mental factors, i.e., greed (lobha), anger (dvēsa) and delusion (moha) are strongly emphasized as the three root-causes of these actions (Kārikā 20), and ultimately are the three obstacles for Buddhists who strive for Nirvāṇa (Kārikā 31). The most sinful action (Kārikā 32 a-b) and the most desireable state for Buddhist practitioners (Kārikā 32c-d) are enumerated.

The structure of the Karma-varga was later emulated by other Sarvāstivāda Abhidharma works. Two of the AH's direct commentaries, i.e., Upaśānta's Abhidharmahrdayasūtra (AHS) and Dharmatrāta's Miśrakābhidharmahrdayaśāstra (MAS), are examples. The third chapter of AHS parallels the structure of the AH; it is comprised of 31 verses and their explanations. Upaśānta employs all of Dharmaśri's verses in this chapter.¹ The work does not represent a remarkable doctrinal development, yet is one of the limited

¹AHS (Taisho, 28, 839c-843c).
commentaries on the AH. Dharmatrāta's MAS is, on the other hand, an extensive commentary on the AH. The third chapter of the MAS is comprised of 75 verses and their explanations. Dharmatrāta draws heavily upon the structure of the AH in order to articulate his philosophical viewpoints.² His work also attempts to re-examine the views expressed in the AH from the orthodox Kashmir-Vaibhāṣika viewpoint that had been defined and laid out in the Mahāvibhāṣa³ and in this way develops the doctrine of the Sarvāstivāda school.

²MAS (Taisho, 28, 888a-899b).

B: Remarks on the Present Translation

I will present here a complete translation of the *Karma-varga* of the *AH* together with its commentary, the *MAS*. Though the *AHS*, as previously mentioned, is extant, it does not represent a remarkable, doctrinal development and thus, is employed only in the footnotes. In the present translation, the *MAS* is the primary commentarial source. My translations are based solely on the editions contained in the *Taisho shinshu daizokyo* as follows:

Text: \(*AH* (A-p'i-t'an Hsin Lun) Taisho #1550

Commentary: \(\text{MAS} (Tsa A-p'i-t'an Hsin Lun) Taisho #1552

\(*AH (A-p'i-t'an Hsin Lun Ching) Taisho #1551

When one attempts to translate Abhidharma texts into English, certain difficulties are confronted. First, extensive use of jargon. This literature was designed for and composed by specialists—monks who were highly trained in Buddhist practice and philosophical argumentation. It employed definitions based on many technical terms, scholastic controversies and citations from the scriptures—the *Nikāya* and *Agama*. Most readers, without a commentary, would find it difficult to penetrate these highly scholastic and complex works.
Second is the fact that these Abhidharma texts were composed some 2000 years ago, so that what were mundane examples then are obscure and puzzling to modern readers; some animals and plants cited are now extinct and some tools are no longer used.

Third, in the case of the AH and its commentaries, the original Sanskrit texts are not extant. This is also the case for most of the earlier Sarvāstivāda Abhidharma texts. For that reason we have no recourse but to recreate the meaning of original Sanskrit texts based upon Chinese translations. Fortunately, Vasubandhu's AK is extant in Sanskrit, Chinese and Tibetan. The Index to the Sanskrit, Chinese and Tibetan versions of this text is also available. The AK is frequently employed for the present translation.

In spite of these difficulties, I have attempted to achieve a translation that, I think, is both faithful to the original as well as understandable to the reader. Abhidharma texts, which contain timeless and important ideas, should be accessible not only to Buddhist monks, but to the laity, as well as those outside the Buddhist tradition. For that reason, I have attempted to translate any Sanskrit terms

---

into English. However, some terms have been already anglicized (Buddha, Nirvāṇa, Dharma, etc.) and they will remain in that form. Also, some Sanskrit terms have very specific, Buddhist philosophical connotations and are, therefore, non-translateable. In those cases, the words are given in Sanskrit with their English explanations found in Appendix II (Glossary of Abhidharma Technical Terms). When necessary, the Sanskrit equivalents of English terms (and occasionally vice versa) are given in parentheses for clarification. Most Sanskrit equivalents are cited from the AK.

I have also attempted to elaborate on sentences which would otherwise be extremely terse. Additional words are supplied in brackets in order to facilitate understanding a passage. The division into sections and paragraphs is a demonstration and clarification of my understanding of the content and organization of the text. These divisions do not appear in the original text.
C. Table of the Contents

(* indicates that the discussion is only found in the commentary.)

I. Introduction to Karma

1. General Introduction to Karma 113 - 117
2. Threefold Division of Action 118 - 122

II. The Various Aspects of Action

1. Wholesome, Unwholesome & Indeterminate Action 129 - 133
2. Action & The Realms of Existence 134 - 143
3. The Potential to Perform Wholesome Actions (samvara)
   A. Prātimokṣa-samvara, Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara 144 - 147
   B. Relationship between The Potential and One's Mind 148 - 151
   C. The Acquisition of Potential 152 - 156

III. The Possession and The Three Time Periods

1. Prātimokṣa-samvara 157 - 160
2. Manifested Action 161 - 162
3. Dhyāna-samvara 163 - 166
4. Anāsrava-samvara 167 - 169
5. Unwholesome Action 170 - 173
6. Unwholesome Potential (asamvara) 174 - 177
7. The Intermediate State 178 - 180
8. Indeterminate Action * 181 - 182
IV. The Wholesome Potential & The Unwholesome Potential

1. The Wholesome Potential & The Unwholesome Potential* 183 - 185
2. The Effective Period of Potential* 186 - 188
3. The Acquisition of Potential
   A. Prātimokṣa-samvara * 189 - 197
   B. Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara 198 - 206
   C. Unwholesome Potential * 207 - 212
4. The Termination of Potential
   A. Prātimokṣa-samvara, Dhyāna-samvara & Anāsrava-samvara 213 - 220
   B. The Others 221 - 226

V. Ten Courses of Action (Karma-patha)

1. The Three Root-causes of Unwholesome Actions 227 - 233
2. Ten Unwholesome Courses of Action (Karma-patha)
   A. The Three Unwholesome Courses of Body-actions * 234 - 237
   B. The Four Unwholesome Courses of Speech-actions * 238 - 240
   C. The Three Unwholesome Courses of Mind-actions * 241
3. The Cause of Unwholesome Courses of Actions
   A. Anger * 242
   B. Greed * 243
   C. The Three Unwholesome Roots* 244
   D. Wrong-view* 245
4. Unwholesome Actions and The Three Unwholesome Roots* 246 - 249
5. Manifested and Unmanifested Actions* 250 - 253
6. Action, Preparation and Result * 254 - 257
7. Various States and The Unwholesome Courses of Action * 258 - 262
8. Various States and The Wholesome Courses of Action * 263 - 265
9. Volition and Courses of Action
   A. Unwholesome Courses of Action * 266 - 268
   B. Wholesome Courses of Action * 269 - 271
10. Various Effects * 272 - 277

VI. Various Divisions of Action
1. Action and The Time of Its Retribution 278 - 284
2. The Three-fold Division of Action 285 - 293
3. The Four-fold Division of Actions 294 - 301
4. The Three False Actions 302 - 305
5. Mind and Mental States Causing Actions* 306 - 310
6. The Three Pure Actions 311 - 315

VII. Action and Its Effect

1. Five Effects* 316 - 319
2. Various Effects of Actions 320 - 332
3. Actions and The Four Great Elements 333 - 337

VIII. The Three Obstacles to Attaining Enlightenment

1. The Three Obstacles 338 - 344
2. The Act of Destroying The Buddhist Community* 345 - 353
3. The Worst Action and The Finest Action 354 - 358
AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF KARMA-VARGA
I. Introduction to Karma

1. General Introduction to Karma

AH (812B.14-21)

I (Dharmaśrī) have already explained the various conditioned states (samskāra), and that these states arise from the various causes (hetu) and necessary preconditions (pratyaya).\(^2\) I will now explain [the principle that] the various causes ornament (citrayati) the effects (phala) and bring about variety of births (jāti) [of sentient beings]. Now it will be explained:

(1a-d) KARMA ORNAMENTS THE VARIOUS DESTINIES AND THE VARIOUS CIRCUMSTANCES IN THE WORLD.
HENCE REFLECT ON KARMA AND SEEK RELEASE FROM THE WORLD.

"Karma ornaments the various destinies (gati) and the various circumstances (sthāna) in the world (loka)" means that [each sentient being] is endowed with a different kind of body in the five destinies\(^3\) during the three time periods. The variety in the world is indeed brought about by

\(^1\)The term 'karma' is generally translated as 'action.' Karma, with a capital 'K' refers to the so-called 'karmic principle.'

\(^2\)AH, (Taisho, 28, 809A.1-812B.18).

\(^3\)The five gatis are: hell (nāraka); hungry spirit (preta); animal (tiryāṅc); man (manuṣya) and heaven (deva).
Karma. Hence, [you should] reflect on Karma and seek release (nirvāna) from the world of [transmigration] (samsāra).
Commentary (888A.6-18)

I (Dharmāṭāta) have already explained the various conditioned states (samskāra), and that [these conditioned states] arise from the causes (hetu) and neccessary preconditions (pratyaya). The various conditioned states bring about a variety of births (jāti) [of sentient beings]. Karma specifically establishes this variety. Now I will explain Karma:

(1a-d) KARMA ORNAMENTS THE VARIOUS DESTINIES AND THE VARIOUS CIRCUMSTANCES IN THE WORLD. HENCE REFLECT ON KARMA AND SEEK RELEASE FROM THE WORLD.

"Karma ornaments the various destinies (gati) and the various circumstances (sthāna) in the world (loka)" means that [each sentient being] is endowed with his/her own particular kind (gotra) in all the five destinies [because of] Karma. Karma is the seed (bīja) and the existence of the world sprouts from [Karma], just as [a plant] sprouts from a [particular] seed. [In this way] Karma endows each sentient being with his/her distinctive kind.

"Hence reflect on Karma and seek release (nirvāna) from the world" means that Karma is the distinctive [element which causes] the entrance into the womb (avakṛānti).

---

4 Mas, I & II (Taisho, 28, 869C.1-888A.5).
Knowing this, if you want to be released from [the cyclic world of] birth and death (samsāra), you should think about [karma].
2. Threefold Division of Action

AH (812b.22-25)

(2a-d) BODY, SPEECH AND MIND ACTIONS ARE PERFORMED BY
SENTIENT BEINGS.
VARIOUS STATES [OF SENTIENT BEINGS] ARE ESTABLISHED
BY THESE [ACTIONS], AND THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF
BODIES ARE [ALSO] ORNAMENTED [BY THESE ACTIONS].

"Body (kāya), speech (vāk) and mind (manas) actions are
performed by sentient beings" means that body, speech and
mind actions are performed by each sentient being. [Then,]
various states [of sentient beings] are established by these
[actions]. Different kinds of bodies [of sentient beings]
are [also] ornamented [by these actions].
Commentary (888A.18-B.13)

What is Karma? The answer is:

(2a-d) KARMA IS ACCUMULATED BY BODY, SPEECH AND MIND ACTIONS. [THESE ACTIONS] ARE RECOGNIZED IN [THE LIFE OF] SENTIENT BEINGS. THESE ACTIONS ESTABLISH VARIOUS CONDITIONED STATES AND ORNAMENT DIFFERENT KINDS OF BODIES [OF SENTIENT BEINGS].

"Karma is accumulated by body, speech and mind actions. [These actions] are recognized in [the life of] sentient beings" means that body-action (kāya-karma), speech-action (vāk-karma) and mind-action (manas-karma) are Karma. These three types of actions bring about a variety of effects (phala).

Each sentient being is given (1) his/her lifetime: from birth to death (pūrvakāla-bhava); (2) his/her moment of dying (marana-bhava); (3) the interval between his/her death and his/her next life (antarā-bhava) and (4) in the state of embryo (upapatti-bhava). Each sentient being accumulates Karma [during these four states of life].

Question: Why is action classified into three [types] ? [Is the classification made] because of its essential nature (svabhāva), because of its foundation (āśraya) or because of its cause (samutthāna) ? If [the classification was made]

------

5AK discusses these four states in detail. See AK, III, 37ff.
because of its essential nature, actions should be only one type: speech-action. Because speech is no other than action. If [the classification was made] because of its foundation, action should be one type: body-action. Because every [action] is performed by [human] bodies. If [the classification was made] because of its cause, action should be one type: mind-action. Because every action arises from one's mind.6

Answer: This [threelfold division] is made because of the [following] three points: (1) the essential nature of [human action] is [found] in speech-action because speech itself has [specific] functions7; (2) the foundation [of actions] is body-action because action is caused by human bodies, performed by human bodies, associated with human bodies and carried out by human bodies; (3) the cause of [action] is mind-action because even body-action and speech-action arise from one's mind. But these [body-action and speech-action] are not called mind-action. Another example is the case of eye-consciousness (cakṣur-vijñāna) [and mind].8

6This discussion is also found in MVS (Taisho, 27, 587B.1-C.6).

7See MVS (Taisho, 27, 587B.1ff).

8Every human activity is motivated by one's mind. But organs have various functions: eyes see; ears hear; nose smells and so on.
Question: Then, what are the effects of these actions?

Answer: [The verse says], "These actions establish various conditioned states and ornament different kinds of bodies [of sentient beings]." This explains that [the existence of] each sentient being should be [recognized as] the 'dominant effect' (adhipati-phala). The 'formations' (samskāra) here indicates all phenomenal elements surrounding [each sentient being]. The external characteristic of sentient beings and their life-span are the effects of these actions.

---

9 The Sarvāstivāda explains the universal law of cause and effect by using the term 'kārana-hetu' (efficient cause) and 'adhipati-phala' (dominant effect). They understand that everything causes the existence of each dharma. This cause is called 'efficient cause' and its effect 'dominant effect'. AK explains this 'efficient cause' as the function of non-hindrance (avighna-bhāva-avasthāna) by which certain dharma allow or even offer the medium for the manifestation or generation of dharma. In other words, all phenomenal elements in the world should be somewhat related to the existence of each dharma, and they should be the cause of its existence. In this case, the existence of each dharma is regarded as its effect, i.e., 'universal effect' (adhipati-phala). This discussion is found in the AK, pp.82-83. See also Alfonso Verdu, Early Buddhist Philosophy, (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1985), pp.67-78.

10 The term 'formation' (samskāra) is usually understood as one of five aggregates (skandha): material form (rūpa); feeling (vedanā); idea (saṃjñā); formation (samskāra) and cognition (vijñāna). The term 'samskāra' is here used for the synonym of conditioned dharma (samskrta-dharma). AK explains thus: It (samskāra) develops the conditioned dharma's (samskrta-dhārma) through the arising of Karma. Therefore it is called the appropriated aggregate of formations (samskāra-upādāna-skandha). (AK, p.10.) This means that the samskāra produces all phenomenal elements in the world.
Question: Then, how are the various external and internal marks (lakṣaṇa) [of each sentient being] established? Are these marks established based on the four great elements (mahābhūta)\(^{11}\), based on the derivative matters [from the four great elements] (bhautika-rūpa)\(^{12}\) or by actions?

Answer: [Various marks are established based upon these following] three [causes]: (1) The four great elements cause various marks. That is, all these marks are produced (鸗platti) from [the four great elements], founded (niśraya) on [the four great elements], held (pratisthā) by [the four great elements], grown (upabṛṃhana) in [the four great elements] and maintained (upasthambha) by [the four of great elements]\(^{13}\); (2) Derivative matters [from the four great elements] bring about various marks [because of] the

\(^{11}\)The four great elements are: (1) earth (prthvī); (2) water (ap); (3) fire (agni) and (4) air (vāyu). Earth represents solidity (khaṇa); water represents moisture (sneha); fire represents heat (usnaṭā) and air represents mobility (Īrana). These four elements compose all other material forms (rūpa). See AK, p.8ff.

\(^{12}\)According to the Sarvāstivāda, material forms (rūpa) are distinguished by the four great elements from bhautika-rūpa (meaning 'derivative matters from the four great elements'). Bhautika-rūpa may be understood as the material in a common way.

\(^{13}\)The four great elements preserve these five functions. See the AK, p.8.
'homogenous cause' (sabhāga-hetu).\textsuperscript{14} (3) Action brings about various marks [because of] 'maturation cause' (vipāka-hetu).\textsuperscript{15} One's external marks [with which one is originally endowed] do not undergo any change [by performing actions during one's life-span]. However, the sentient being who [habitually] performs good actions can enjoy good health as well as good life; the sentient being who always performs bad actions can enjoy neither good health nor good life. Thus, action causes various external as well as internal marks [of sentient beings].

\textsuperscript{14} 'Sabhāga-hetu' literally means 'homogenous cause'. This is the causality including uniformity and homogeneity between cause and its immediate effect. This indicates the succession of similarity and continuity in specific nature: dogs generate dogs and human beings generate human beings. According to the Sarvāstivāda, the sabhāga-hetu preserves the causal function whereby a specific dharma is always followed by dharmas of the same specific nature in a state of flux: a rūpa-dharma (form of dharma) is followed by another rūpa-dharma. This causality applies to a specific material among various derivative matters from the four great elements. The detailed discussion on the sabhāga-hetu is found in the AK, p.85-88. See also Verdu, pp.73-74.

\textsuperscript{15} 'Vipāka-hetu' literally means 'maturation cause'. This is the causation that takes a morally imputable action to bring about an effect in a future life as its retribution: wholesome actions bring about a pleasant effect; unwholesome actions bring about an unpleasant effect. That is, this causality explains the kind of 'agent-effect' relationship attributed to an individual human action. See the AK, pp.89-90. See also Verdu, pp.75-76;70-106.
3. Manifested (vijñāpti) & Unmanifested (avijñāpti) Actions

AH (812B.26-C.7)

The characteristics of these actions will be explained briefly now.

(3a-d) BODY-ACTION IS BOTH MANIFESTED AND UNMANIFESTED. IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT BOTH EXIST. SPEECH-ACTION IS LIKewise. MIND-ACTION IS ONLY UNMANIFESTED.

"Body-action is b "h manifested (vijñāpti) and unmanifested (avijñāpti)." It should be known that both exist" means that the nature of body-action is two-fold: the nature of manifestation and that of unmanifestation. Among them, manifested [action] is the movement of body and it is wholesome (kuśala), unwholesome (akuśala) or indeterminate (avyākṛta). Wholesome [actions] arise from a wholesome mind (kuśala-citta), unwholesome [actions] arise from an unwholesome mind (akuśala-citta) and indeterminate [actions] arise from an indeterminate mind (avyākṛta-citta).

As for unmanifested [actions], if those actions which

one performs are with firm intent, [the residual of actions] is transferred [among the three] minds transforming [them] by [planting] seeds (bīja). Therefore, the [residual of good actions] is preserved even in the unwholesome or indeterminate minds. [For example,] one who is ordained and following the Buddhist precepts faithfully preserves [the potential to perform wholesome actions (samvara)]; one who [habitually] performs unwholesome actions preserves the potential to perform unwholesome actions (asamvara).17

"Speech-action is likewise" means that the nature of speech-action is also two-fold: [manifested and unmanifested].

"Mind-action is only unmanifested" means that the nature of mind-action action is no other than unmanifested. Why? Because it is not visible,18 and it establishes a subtle series of volitions (cetanā).

17'Samvara' literally means 'restraint' or 'control'. Here samvara together with its antonym 'asamvara' specifically refers to an ethically potent element: samvara is the residual element of good actions, which prevents one from performing bad actions; asamvara literally means 'non-restraint'. Here asamvara specifically refers to the residual element of bad actions, which prevents one from performing good actions. See AK, p. 205ff.

18This understanding is peculiar: mental action is unmanifested (avijñāpti) simply because it is not visible. It is understood in the AHS in the same manner. See AHS (Taishō, 28, 840A.11). The later texts, such as, MAS (Taishō, 28, 888B) and AK (p. 192), reserve unmanifested only for body-action and speech-action. In the AK, it is stated that the Saunterntika also understand avijñāpti to be mere designation (prajñāpti).
Commentary (888B.13-C.13)

The characteristics of these actions shall now be explained briefly now:

(3a-d) BODY-ACTION IS OF TWO [KINDS]: MANIFESTED AND UNMANIFESTED. SPEECH-ACTION IS LIKewise. MIND-ACTION SHOULD BE UNDERSTOOD AS VOLTION.

"Body-action is of two [kinds]: manifested (vījñāpti) and unmanifested (avījñāpti)" means that body-action has two kinds [of nature]-- the nature of manifestation and that of unmanifestation. [The nature of] manifestation indicates bodily action, i.e., motion. [It is called] 'manifested body-action' (kāya-vījñāpti).

[The nature of] unmanifestation indicates that although a motion has ceased, the potential [to perform the same motion] is transferred to another consciousness (vījñāna). [For example,] one who is ordained and following the Buddhist precepts faithfully maintains the potential [to perform wholesome actions] (sāmvara), and the potential can be transferred to even the unwholesome or indeterminate minds; one who [habitually] performs unwholesome actions maintains the potential [to perform unwholesome actions] (asāmvara), and the potential is transferred to even the wholesome and indeterminate minds.

"Speech-action is likewise" means that speech-action is
also of two kinds: manifested and unmanifested. [The nature of manifestation and unmanifestation] has been mentioned above.

"Mind-action should be understood as volition (cetanā)" means that the essential nature (svabhāva) of mind-action is volition.

[Objection]: One (Dharmaśrī) attempted to explain that mind-action has the nature of unmanifestation. But, this is not true. [It should be noted that] one's mind has neither the nature of manifestation nor the nature of unmanifestation. Because mind is not a material form (rūpa); [it does not have] the three marks [of material forms].

[The term] 'unmanifested' (avijñaptī) is sometimes supplanted by [such terms as] 'unintentional' (anicchā), 'unperceptible' (avijñaptika), 'abandoning' (upeksā) and 'not-performed' (akṛta). One might think that the term 'not-

---

18 AH III, (Taisho, 28, 812B.28ff).

19 Form (rūpa) preserves these three characteristics: (1) it is visible and is effected when it is acted upon by something else. It indicates common-matter; (2) It is not visible but is effected when it is acted upon by something else. It includes the five senses: seeing; hearing; smelling; tasting and touching. It also includes such sense objects as sound or voice; smell; taste and touch-feeling. (3) It is neither visible nor effected when it is acted upon by something else. The Sarvāstivāda regards it as 'unmanifested-form' (avijñaptī-rūpa). See AK, p.8ff.
performed' indicates nothing is done. But, this is not true because of [the etymology of kr] which is 'to do' or 'to perform'. [It should be understood thus]: in the case that a wholesome person does not perform unwholesome actions [because of the potential to perform wholesome actions, this indicates that he/she] performs [wholesome actions]; in the case that an unwholesome person does not perform wholesome actions [because of the potential to perform unwholesome actions, this indicates that he/she] performs [unwholesome actions].

The term 'abandoning' indicates [that an unwholesome action] is abandoned [when the wholesome action is performed]. Another example is the term 'upeksā-sambodhy-aṅga' (meaning abandoning or withdrawing one's thoughts from external objects, thereby keeping his/her mind balanced).²⁰ The term 'abandoning' (upeksā) here indicates not abandoning the Buddhist practice but abandoning any obstacles [for pursuing enlightenment].

[Manifested action (vijñapti-karma)] has material form (rūpa) and performs activity (kriyā) [as its essential nature]. Unmanifested action (avijñapti-karma) is not [essentially] material form. [However], unmanifested action

²⁰'Upeksā-sambodhy-aṅga' is one of the Buddhist meditative practices. It is included in the so-called 'Seven meditative practices for attaining enlightenment'.
is also indicated as material form, because it [arises from] manifested action which possesses [the nature of] material form. Thus, the world-honored one (Bhagavant) explains: "Everything has its cause and effect. Knowing the cause, its effect is to be understood."

---

21 See AK, p.8ff.
II. The Various Aspects of Actions

1. Wholesome, Unwholesome and Indeterminate

AH (812C.7-23)

Question: Among these five actions²², which are wholesome (kuśala), unwholesome (akuśala) and indeterminate (avyākṛta) ? Answer:

(4a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT MANIFESTED [ACTION] IS THREEFOLD: WHOLESOME, UNWHOLESOME AND INDETERMINATE. MIND-ACTION, WHICH IS UNMANIFESTED, IS LIKewise. THERE IS NO INDETERMINATE IN THE REST [OF THE ACTIONS].

"It should be known that manifested [action] is threefold: wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate" means that manifested body-action (kāya-vijñapti) and manifested speech-action (vāk-vijñapti) are threefold: wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate. Among these [actions], manifested body-action which is wholesome refers to [such actions as] giving alms (dāna), following the Buddhist

²²The five actions are:

```
   Action
    /    
   v     v
Body-action { Manifested body-action
             { Unmanifested body-action
Speech-action { Manifested speech-action
             { Unmanifested speech-action
Mind-action..... Unmanifested mind-action
```
precepts and so on. These bodily movements arise from a wholesome mind. Manifested body-action which is unwholesome refers to [such actions as] killing sentient beings (prānātipāta), theft (adattādāna), sexual misconduct (abrahmacarya) and so on. These bodily movements arise from an unwholesome mind. Manifested body-action which is indeterminate refers to daily conduct (īryāpatha), one's artistic skill (śilpāsthāna) and so on. These bodily movements arise from an indeterminate mind.

Likewise, manifested speech-action which is wholesome refers to [such verbal actions as] speaking honestly (mrśavāda-virati), kind (anugraha) and opportune (nīti) advice (vacana) and so on. These verbal actions arise from a wholesome mind. [Manifested speech-action which is] unwholesome refers to [such verbal actions as] telling lies (mrśavāda), malicious words (paiśunya), harsh words (parusa) and senseless talk (sambhinna-pralāpa). [These verbal actions] arise from an unwholesome mind. [Manifested] speech-action which is indeterminate arises from an indeterminate mind.

"Mind-action, which is unmanifested, is likewise" means that mind-action which is unmanifested is also three kinds: wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate. The volition (cetanā) which is associated with a wholesome mind is wholesome; the volition which is associated with an
unwholesome mind is unwholesome; and the volition which is associated with an indeterminate mind is indeterminate.

[The verse says], "There is no indeterminate in the rest [of the actions]." 'The rest [of the actions]' indicates two [actions]: unmanifested body-action and unmanifested speech-action. Both are of only two kinds: wholesome and unwholesome. [These actions are] not indeterminate. [Such] strong [and influential] actions [as manifested body-action and manifested speech-action are able to] produce [the potential to perform wholesome/unwholesome actions]. [That potential] is transferred among [the three] minds transforming them. [However,] an indeterminate mind is not strong enough to produce [such potential]. Therefore, both unmanifested body-action and unmanifested speech-action are [always either wholesome or unwholesome], and not indeterminate.
Commentary (888C.2-15)

I have already explained these five actions. Now, I will explain the various divisions of these actions.

(4a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT MANIFESTED [ACTION] IS OF THREE KINDS: WHOLESOME, UNWHOLESOME AND INDETERMINATE. MIND-ACTION IS LIKewise. THERE IS NO INDETERMINATE IN THE REST [OF THE ACTIONS].

"It should be known that manifested [action] is of three kinds" means that manifested body-action and manifested speech-action are of three kinds: wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate. The wholesome indicates bodily and verbal actions which arise from a wholesome mind. For example, giving alms, following the Buddhist precepts and so on. The unwholesome indicates bodily and verbal actions which arise from an unwholesome mind. For example, killing sentient beings and so on. The indeterminate indicates bodily and verbal actions which arise from an indeterminate mind.

"Mind-action is likewise" means that mind-action is also of three kinds: wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate. The mind-action associated with a wholesome mind is wholesome; the mind-action associated with an unwholesome mind is unwholesome; and the mind-action associated with an indeterminate mind is indeterminate.

[The verse says,] "There is no indeterminate in the rest of the actions." 'The rest [of the actions]' indicate
two [actions]: unmanifested body-action (kāya-avijñāpti) and unmanifested speech-action (vāk-avijñāpti). Both actions are [either] wholesome or unwholesome. There is no indeterminate [in these two actions]. [Such] strong [and influential] actions [as manifested body-action and manifested speech-action] are able to produce [the potential to perform the same] body-action and speech-action, and [the potential] is transferred among [the three] minds transforming them. [However,] an indeterminate mind is not strong enough [to produce such potential]. Like incense or a flower, even when tossed aside leave behind a fragrance; a tree and stone, [like an indeterminate mind], do not.\textsuperscript{23}

\textsuperscript{23}AHS (Taisho, 28, 840A.27-29) gives the same analogy.
2. Actions and The Realms of Existence
AH (812C.24-813A.7)

Question: What is the nature of indeterminate action?
To what kind of realm (dhātu) is it linked?

Answer:

(5a-d) INDETERMINATE [ACTION] WHICH POSSESSES MATERIAL
FORM IS OF TWO KINDS: 'CONCEALED' AND
'UNCONCEALED'.
CONCEALED-INDETERMINATE [ACTION] IS LINKED TO THE
[REALM] OF FORM. THE OTHER IS LINKED TO TWO REALMS.

(The verse says,) "Indeterminate [action] which possesses
material form (rūpa) is of two kinds: 'concealed' (nivṛta)
and 'unconcealed' (anivṛta)." [Indeterminate] body-action
and speech-action possess material form, because action
possesses material form. [These indeterminate actions arise
from an indeterminate mind. The indeterminate mind] is of
two kinds: 'concealed-[indeterminate]' (nivṛtāvāyākṛta) and
'unconcealed-[indeterminate]' (anivṛtāvāyākṛta). A concealed-
[indeterminate mind] indicates [one's mind] which arises
from various human passions (kleśa), [that one's right view]
is concealed by passions. That which is otherwise is
unconcealed-[indeterminate mind].

Concealed-[indeterminate action] is linked to the realm
of form (rūpa-dhātu), because the concealed-[indeterminate
mind] must be linked to the realm of form. Why? Human
proclivities (anuṣaya) which can be abandoned by concentrative practice (bhāvanā-heya) are able to give rise to body and speech-actions.\(^\text{24}\) These human proclivities, [however,] are always linked to the realm of desire (kāma-dhātu) and are unwholesome. These human proclivities [which arise from] an unwholesome [mind] are never able to give rise to indeterminate actions.

"The other is linked to two realms" means that indeterminate action [which arises from] an un concealed- indeterminate [mind] is linked to both the realm of desire and the realm of form.

[Indeterminate] mind-action has already been explained elsewhere.\(^\text{25}\) Therefore it will not be explained now.

---


\(^\text{25}\) AH, II, (Taisho, 28, 811A.10ff).
Commentary (888C.15-889A.24)

We have examined these five actions. [Among them,] volition (cetanā), [which is the essential nature of mind-action], possesses no material form (rūpa). This has been already explained [with reference to] mental states belonging to the fundamental level (mahābhūmika-caitīta).26

Question: Now, what is the nature of the rest of the actions?

Answer:

(5a-d) [ACTION POSSESSES] THE NATURE OF MATERIAL FORM. [IT IS] 'DEFILED' AND 'UNDEFILED'. UNDEFILED [ACTION IS LINKED TO] FIVE [STATES]. CONCEALED-[INDETERMINATE ACTION] IS LINKED TO THE REALM OF FORM. UNWHOLSOME [ACTION] IS LINKED TO THE REALM OF DESIRE.

"[Action possesses] the nature of material form" means that all body and speech-actions are based on the four great elements (mahābhūta). Manifested body-action is a material form which is visible (sanidānā) and which is effected when it is acted upon by something else (sappatīgā).

26 MAS, II, (Taisho, 28, 881A.12ff). The Sarvāstivāda establishes the ten mental states belonging to "an extensive level": (1) feeling (vedanā); (2) volition (cetanā); (3) sensation (saṃjñā); (4) desire (chanda); (5) touching (sparśa); (6) discrimination (māti); (7) memory (smṛti); (8) attention (manaskāra); (9) intention (adhimokṣa) and (10) concentration (samādhi). See Herbert V. Guenther, Philosophy and Psychology in the Abhidharma, (Shambala, Berkeley: 1976), pp.31-32.
manifested speech-action is a material form which is not visible (anidarśana) but which is effected when it is acted upon by something else; both unmanifested [body-action and speech-action] are material forms which are neither visible nor effected when they are acted upon by something else (apratighata).

Question: How are body and speech-actions classified?

Answer: [They are of] two kinds: 'defiled' (kliṣṭa) and 'undefiled' (akliṣṭa). [Body-action and speech action which possess] material form are of two kinds: [that which is] defiled [by passions (kleśa)]; [that which is] undefiled [by passions].

Defiled [action] arises based on passion. This is [also] of two kinds: concealed-indeterminate and unwholesome.

Concealed-indeterminate [action] does not bring about retribution (vipāka). [It arises from an indeterminate mind

27 All dharmas are classified into two: 'contaminated' (āsrava) dharma and 'uncontaminated' (anāsrava) dharma. Contaminated dharma indicates all conditioned (samskṛta) dharmas except for the truth of the path (mārga-satya); uncontaminated dharma indicates the truth of the path and three types of unconditioned dharmas: space (ākāsa); cessation through realization (pratisamkhya-nirodha); and cessation not through realization (appratisamkhya-niroda). The contaminated dharma is further classified into two: (1) that which is a obstacle for attaining enlightenment. It is called 'defiled' dharma. Unwholesome and concealed-indeterminate dharmas are included in it; (2) wholesome and unconcealed-indeterminate dharmas are, on the other hand, called 'undefiled' dharma. See AK,pp.3-4.
shamelessness (ahrīka) and impudence (anapatrāpya). [This mind arises from] the passion which brings about only 'down-flow effect' (nisyanda-phala). [Unwholesome action] brings about retribution. [It arises from an unwholesome mind which] is associated with [such mental states as] shamelessness and impudence. [This mind arises from] the passion which brings about two effects: ['maturation effect' (vipāka-phala) and down-flow effect].

Undefiled [action] is also of two kinds: wholesome and unconcealed-indeterminate. Wholesome [action] brings about a pleasant effect (sukha-phala). This [wholesome action] is also of two kinds: contaminated (sāsrava) and uncontaminated (anāsrava). [These two] will be explained later in this chapter.

------------------------

28 The Sarvāstivāda discusses various mental states (caittta). Shamelessness and impudence are always associated with an unwholesome mind. They are also called the mental states which are fundamentally unwholesome (akusala-mahābūmi). Various mental states are discussed in the AK II (pp.24-32).

29 'Nisyanda-phala' literally means 'down-flow effect'. This effect is always brought about by the cause of the same category. Thus, herem an indeterminate mind brings about an indeterminate effect. See Verdu, pp.73-74.

30 'Vipāka-phala' literally means 'maturation effect'. Each action produces a fruit in a future life as its retribution. This retribution is called 'vipāka-phala'. See Verdu, pp.76-106.

31 MAS (Taisho, 28, 897B.20ff).
Unconcealed-indeterminate [action] arises from an unconcealed-indeterminate mind. [Examples of such actions are] one's daily conduct or one's artistic skill. [These actions] are not retribution [for past actions]. Firm intent is necessary for one to perform body and speech-actions. If [the action performed] is retribution [for past actions], [then] one's intention was not strong enough [to produce new actions]. In other words, body and speech-actions are not [simply] retribution [for past actions] because one's [firm] intent is in the process of producing [these body and speech actions] at the present moment. [That is,] if the action performed is retribution [for past actions], [then one's intention was] not [strong enough to produce] such actions as one's daily conduct and one's artistic skill. Therefore, [we should know again that] body and speech-actions are never [simply] retribution [for past actions].

Question: To what level (bhūmi) in the realm of existence (dhātu) are [these actions] linked?

Answer: Undefiled [action] is linked to the [following] five levels: the realm of desire (kāma-dhātu) and the 'four types of meditation' (catur-dhyāna-bhūmika) [in the realm of form (rūpa-dhātu)].32 This is a general explanation [of the

32 The four types of meditation are established in the realm of form as well as in the formless realm. This meditative process is introduced in Griffiths, pp.231-268.
relationship between undefiled action and the realms of existence. I will now explain it in detail.

Wholesome, manifested [body and speech-actions] are only linked to the first level [of the four types of meditation]. They are not linked to [other] higher levels [among the four types of meditation].

Question: Why?

Answer: Manifested body and speech-action are associated with a 'gross' (audārika) mental state. One's mental state [in the higher levels among the four types of meditation] is 'subtle' (sūksma).\(^{33}\) Manifested action is associated with one's mental state which is apprehensible by (or to) the five sense organs. But one's mental state [in these higher levels among the four types of meditation] is not apprehensible by (or to) the five sense organs. Manifested action is associated with such mental states as 'reflection' (vitarka) and 'investigation' (vicāra). [However,] there are no [such mental states] in these [higher levels among the four types of meditation].\(^{34}\)

\(^{33}\)The Sarvāstivāda understands the term 'gross' and 'subtle' thus: "The gross form (rūpa) is that which is apprehensible by the five sense organs; the subtle form is otherwise." See AK, p. 13.1ff (audārika-rūpam pancendriyagrahyam, sūksmaḥ anyat).

\(^{34}\)If one enters into the intermediate stage between the first meditation and the second meditation, both 'reflection' (vitarka) and 'investigation' (vicāra) are suppressed. See Griffiths, pp.252-254.
Wholesome, unmanifested [action] is linked to the [following] five levels [in the realm of existence]: the realm of desire and the four types of meditation. ['Wholesome, unmanifested action'] indicates Prātimokṣa-samvara, Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara.\textsuperscript{35}

Manifested body-action which is unconcealed-indeterminate is also linked to these five levels. [These five levels] have been mentioned above. It should be noted that such manifested actions as one's daily conduct and artistic skill arise from one's mind in the realm of desire. One's daily conduct arises from one's mind also in the realm of form, but one's artistic skill does not arise from one's mind [in the realm of form].

Question: It has already been explained that there is no mental state that is associated with manifested [action] in the higher levels [among the four types of meditation]. How does manifested [action] arise [in these levels]?

Answer: The power of the first level [among the four types of meditation] provides the potential to produce manifested [action]. However, this does not hold true for wholesome [manifested action]. The wholesome mind in the first level [among the four types of meditation] is not transferred to any mind in the higher levels. Because the

\textsuperscript{35}These three will be explained in the following section.
power [of the first level] is not strong enough [to bring about another new wholesome mind].

Concealed-[indeterminate action] is linked to the [realm of] form. This means that body and speech-action which are concealed-indeterminate are linked to the first level [among the four types of meditation] in the realm of form. There are no [such actions] in the higher levels [among the four types of meditation]. Because there is no mental state that is associated with manifested [action]. [Moreover,] the defiled mind in the lower levels, [i.e., the realm of desire,] is not transferred to any mind in the higher levels, [i.e., the realm of form]. Because desire must be abandoned [in the realm of form].

[Now, in some mental states, even] in the realm of desire, one's proclivities can be abandoned through the path of cultivation (bhāvanamārga).36 [However,] body and speech-action which are associated with these mental states are not included [in the category of the unconcealed-indeterminate]. Because these mental states in the realm of desire are essentially unwholesome.

The mental state by which one's proclivities are

36 Human proclivities (anuṣaya) can be abandoned in two ways: one by observational analysis (darśanaprahātavya); one by enstatic techniques (bhāvanaprahātavya). Such human proclivities as greed (lobha), aversion (dvesa), ignorance (avidyā) and pride (māna) can be abandoned by enstatic techniques. See Griffiths, pp.277-282.
abandoned through the path of vision (darṣanamārga) does not produce any body and speech-action. This will be explained later.

"Unwholesome [action] is linked to the realm of desire" means that an unwholesome [action] among defiled [actions] is linked not to the realm of form but to the realm of desire. Because in the realm [of form] a wholesome mind is easy to obtain and one's meditative state is maintained, there are no such mental states as shamelessness and impudence [that are always associated with an unwholesome mind] and there is no feeling of suffering (duhkha). An unwholesome mind brings about retribution in the form of suffering. There is no such feeling as suffering in the realm of form as well as in the formless realm (arūpya-dhātu). [Therefore,] action in the realm of form does not bring about retribution [for actions] in the realm of desire. These realms of existence are distinct. The principle of cause and effect functions only within one realm of existence.
3. The Potential to Perform Wholesome Actions (samvara)
A. Pratimokṣa-samvara, Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara
AH (813A.8-14)

(6a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT UNMANIFESTED BODY AND SPEECH-ACTIONS ARE [EITHER] WHOLESOME [OR] UNWHOLESOME. [UNMANIFESTED ACTION] IS CLASSIFIED INTO THREE: DHYĀNA-SAMVARA, ANĀSRAVA-SAMVARA AND PRATIMOKṢA-SAMVARA

[The verse says,] "It should be known that unmanifested body and speech-actions are [either] wholesome [or] unwholesome." Action possesses the nature of material form (rūpa); the action which [also] possesses the nature of unmanifestation (avijñāṇa) is [either] wholesome [or] unwholesome.

"[Unmanifested action] is classified into three: Dhyāna-samvara, Anāsrava-samvara and Pratimokṣa-Samvara" means that the unmanifested [potential to perform wholesome actions] (samvara) is classified into three: (1) Anāsrava-samvara; (2) Dhyāna-samvara and (3) Pratimokṣa-samvara. (1) Anāsrava-samvara is the potential [to perform wholesome actions]; it is acquired by one who [has reached the sacred] path (ārya-mārga) [and arises from a completely uncontaminated mind (anāsrava-citta)]. Right speech-action (samyag-vāc), right body-action (samyak-karma) and right way of life (samyag-ājīva) [are brought about by this potential]. (2) Dhyāna-samvara is [also] the potential to
perform wholesome actions; it is [acquired] by meditative practice (dhyāna). (3) Prātimokṣa-samvara is the potential [to perform wholesome actions] in the realm of desire.\textsuperscript{37}

\textsuperscript{37}'Prātimokṣa' is a name given to a collection of various precepts contained in the Vinaya. Thus, Prātimokṣa-samvara is acquired through following Buddhist precepts. See AK, p.205.
Commentary (889A.24-B.8)

I have already explained the essential nature (svabhāva) and various aspects (prakāra) of body and speech-actions as well as [their relation to] various levels (bhūmi) [in various realms of existence]. Now, I will explain unmanifested potential [to perform wholesome actions] (samvara).

(6a-d) UNMANIFESTED POTENTIAL [TO PERFORM WHOLESOME ACTIONS] IS OF THREE KINDS: ANĀSRAVA-SAMVARA; DHYANA-SAMVARA AND PRATIMOKṢA-SAMVARA.

"Unmanifested potential [to perform wholesome actions] is of three kinds" means that unmanifested (avijñapti) [action] which preserves the potential [to perform wholesome actions] (samvara) is of three kinds.

Question: What are those [three]?

Answer: [The verse says,] "Anāsrava-samvara, Dhyāna-samvara and Pratimokṣa-samvara." Anāsrava-samvara is [the potential to perform wholesome actions], which is acquired through the path [of cultivation (bhāvanamārga) as well as the path of vision (darśanamārga)].³⁸ [It is acquired] by those who are still undergoing the path practice (śaikṣa) as well as those who no longer need the path practice (aśaikṣa, i.e., 'arhat').

³⁸See Griffiths, pp.212-230.
Dhyāna-samvara is [the potential to perform wholesome actions]. which is acquired through meditation (dhyāna). Right speech-action, right body-action and right way of life [are brought about by this potential]. Right way of life establishes [right] body and speech-actions. There is no other foundation [for bringing about these actions in one's life]. Body and speech-actions arise from [such mental states as] non-greed (alobha), non-anger (advega) and non-delusion (amoha). [The body and speech-actions which] arise from non-anger and non-delusion are [specifically] called 'right speech-action' and 'right body-action'. [The body and speech-actions which] arise from non-greed are [specifically] called 'right way of life'. Although there are these three wholesome roots in one's mind, the non-greed is the most dominant mental state [among them].

Prātimokṣa-samvara is [the potential to perform wholesome actions] associated with ordainment (upasampadā), Śikṣā (learning the Buddhist doctrine) and Sīla (the Buddhist precepts).

There is [another] potential [to perform wholesome actions attained by] eradicating [passions] (prahāna-samvara). It will be explained in the chapter of Supplement (Sūtra-varga).³⁹

³⁹MAS (Taisho, 28, 933A.26ff).
B. The Relationship between The Potential and One's Mind

AH (813A.15-21)

(7a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT UNMANIFESTED [ACTION] IN THE REALM OF DESIRE AND MANIFESTED [ACTION] IN THE TWO REALMS ARE NOT ASSOCIATED WITH ONE'S MIND. IT explAINS THAT THE REST [OF THE ACTIONS] ARE ASSOCIATED WITH ONE'S MIND.

[The verse] says, "Unmanifested [action] in the realm of desire is not associated with one's mind." Why? Because one who is ordained and following the Buddhist precepts faithfully [preserves the potential to perform wholesome actions]; this potential is transferred among wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate minds. [Therefore, this potential] is not altered by the wholesome, unwholesome or indeterminate mind.

Manifested [actions] both in the realm of desire and in the realm of form are not associated with one's mind. Why? Because [manifested actions] are performed by one's body [and speech].

The potential [to perform wholesome actions] in the realm of form and Anāsrava-samvara are associated with

---

40 'The potential to perform wholesome actions in the realm of desire' indicates Prātimokṣa-samvara.

41 'The potential to perform wholesome actions in the realm of form' indicates Dhyāna-samvara.
one's mind. Why? [Because these potentials are brought about] by one's mind [during meditation and while achieving the sacred path]. These two potentials are not transferred to other minds.
Commentary (889B.8-17)

Question: Among these body and speech-actions, which actions are associated with one's mind (cittānuparvarttīn) and which are not?

Answer:

(7a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT UNMANIFESTED ACTION IN THE REALM OF DESIRE AND MANIFESTED [ACTION] IN THE TWO [REALMS] ARE NOT ASSOCIATED WITH ONE'S MIND. IT IS EXPLAINED THAT THE REST [OF THE ACTIONS] ARE ASSOCIATED WITH ONE'S MIND.

Unmanifested action in the realm of desire, (i.e., Prātimokṣa-samvara) is not associated with one's mind. Because one who is ordained and following the Buddhist precepts faithfully [preserves the potential to perform wholesome actions]; [this potential] is transferred to unwholesome and indeterminate minds. [This potential itself] is not mental. [Therefore,] it is not affected by any of [these] wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate minds.42 [This potential also preserves the power] to prevent one from performing bad actions. It is realized in one's manifested actions in various ways.

Manifested [action] in the realm of desire as well as in the realm of form is not associated with one's mind

-------------------------

42MVS (Taishō, 27, 622B).
because [manifested action] is performed by one's body. [Manifested action] is not [just] the effect of mental [activity].

[The verse says,] "It is explained that the rest [of the actions] are associated with one's mind." 'The rest [of the actions]' indicates Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara. These [unmanifested actions] are associated with one's mind. [These unmanifested actions] are the effects of mental [activity] and are [acquired through] meditation.
C. The Acquisition of Potential

AH (813A.22-28)

I have already explained the various aspects of actions. Now I will explain how [unmanifested potential] should be acquired.

(8a-d) ANĀSRAVA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED THROUGH THE PATH OF VISION.
DHYANA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED THROUGH MEDITATION.
PRĀTIMOKSA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED BY THOSE WHO LIVE IN THE REALM OF DESIRE.

[The verse says,] "Anāsrava-samvara is acquired through the path of vision." The path of vision (darśana-mārga) indicates that one perceives the [four] noble truths through [the acquisition of] an uncontaminated-view (anāsvara-drśti). When one acquires the uncontaminated-view, he/she can perceive the truth of suffering (duḥkha-satya) in the realm of desire. In this way, all noble individuals (ārya-pudgala) [who have achieved the noble path (ārya-mārga)] can acquire Anāsrava-samvara.43

"Dhyāna-samvara is acquired through meditation" means that during meditation (dhyāna), he/she can acquire Dhyāna-samvara.

"Prātimokṣa-samvara is acquired by those who live in

-------------------------

43This process of realizing the four noble truths is described in the sixth chapter of AK. This process is introduced in Paul Griffiths, pp.312-329.
the realm of desire" means that if one is ordained and following the Buddhist precepts faithfully, he/she can acquire the potential [to perform wholesome actions] in the realm of desire.
Commentary (889B.17-28)

I have already established the [various aspects of] actions. Now I will explain how [unmanifested] potential should be acquired.

(8a-d) **ANĀSRAVA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED THROUGH THE ACHIEVEMENT OF THE PATH OF VISION.**
**DHYĀNA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED THROUGH MEDITATION.**
**PRATIMOKSA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED BY THOSE WHO LIVE IN THE REALM OF DESIRE.**

[The verse says,] "Anāsrava-samvara is acquired through the achievement of the path of vision." 'The achievement of the path of vision' includes all noble paths (ārya-mārga) from the realization of the first noble truth [of suffering] (duhkhe-dharmajñāna-ksāntih) to 'arhatship' (the realization of all four noble truths).44 [In this way,] Anāsrava-samvara is acquired [by those who have achieved these noble paths].

44 The noble path is the specifically Buddhist path which is supposed to lead to nirvāṇa. The first state of the noble path is called the path of vision or darsanamarga; this path is concerned with the detailed analysis of the four noble truths. The first moment of the path of vision is the state of 'duhkhe-dharmajñāna-ksāntih' (meaning the patience which issues from the knowledge of doctrine pertaining to suffering); it is followed by fifteen other moments. The second state of the noble path is the path of cultivation (bhāvanamārga) which is concerned with meditative practice. The final state is 'arhat' or 'anutpādajñāna' (meaning 'knowledge of non-arising'). From the state of duhkhe-dharmajñāna-ksāntih up to the state of "arhat" is called the noble individual (ārya-pudgala). A detailed description on these paths is found in the sixth chapter of AK. See also Griffiths, pp.312-330.
Anāsrava-saṃvara is linked to the six levels [of meditative states] which are (1) the level of 'anāgamya',\(^{45}\) (2) the level of 'intermediate meditation'\(^{46}\) and four types of meditation [in the realm of form]. [Such noble individuals as] a 'stream-winner' (srotāpanna), a 'once-returner' (sakṛdāgāmin) and one who is preparing to become a 'once-returner' can acquire Anāsrava-saṃvara.\(^{47}\) One who is preparing to become a 'never-returner' (anāgāmin) can acquire [Anāsrava-saṃvara] either at the level of anāgamya or at any of the six levels. Some never-returns can acquire [Anāsrava-saṃvara] at any of the following three

\[ \text{-------------------} \]

\(^{45}\)The Sarvāstivāda establishes the four types of meditation in the realm of form. There is a liminal meditation (sāmantaka-dhyāna) for each of the four types of meditation. The liminal meditation for the first meditation of the realm of form is specifically called 'anāgamya'. See Griffiths, pp.245-251;306.

\(^{46}\)There is a special meditative state between the first meditation and the second liminal meditation. It is called 'intermediate meditation' (dhyānāntara). See Griffiths, pp.252-254;306.

\(^{47}\)The noble individual is classified into eight types: The path of vision-----------------(1) Stream-winner-preparation (2) Stream-winner-fruit (3) Once-returner-preparation (4) Once-returner-fruit The path of cultivation--- (5) Never-returner-preparation (6) Never-returner-fruit (7) Arhat-preparation The path beyond training------(8) Arhat-fruit

meditation among the four types of meditation in the realm of form and the level of intermediate meditation]. The other never-returners [can acquire Anāsrava-samvara] at any of the six levels. An arhat [can acquire Anāsrava-samvara] at any of the six levels.

"Dhyāna-samvara is acquired through meditation" means that during meditation (dhyāna), he/she can acquire and continue to possess this Dhyāna-samvara. [This potential] is also linked to the six levels [of meditative states].

"Prātimokṣa-samvara is acquired by those who live in the realm of desire" means that if one is ordained and following the Buddhist precept faithfully, he/she can acquire this Prātimokṣa-samvara. This potential is [specifically] necessary for those who live in the realm of desire. It is not necessary [for those who live in] the other [two] realms.
III. Possession & The Three Time Periods

AH (813A.28-B.8)

I have briefly explained how these potentials should be acquired. Now I will explain [the relationship between] the possession (prāpti) [of various actions] and the three time periods.48

1. Prātimokṣa-samvara


"It should be known that if one is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts now, [he/she will be able to] possess the potential [to perform wholesome actions]" means that while he/she is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, he/she will be able to possess the potential [to perform wholesome

48 The same discussion is found in the MVS (Taisho, 27, 642B-643C). In the AH, samanvāga (meaning accompaniment) is used. It should be noted that samanvāga here functionally equivalent to prāpti (meaning possession). The Sarvāstivāda defines the prāpti as one of the fourteen dharmas which are not associated with one's mind (cittavyavyukta-samśkāra-dharma). A detailed discussion on the notion of "possession" (prāpti) is found in Collett Cox, Controversies in Dharma Theory: Sectarian Dialogue on the Nature of Enduring Reality, (Unpublished Ph.D Thesis, Columbia University: 1983), pp.37-65.
actions] permanently, and he/she will not lose [this potential] until he/she dies.

[The verse says,] "Though [the present possession of the potential] is [momentarily] extinguished, [the possession of] the past [potential] arises [again]." For example, an unmanifested potential [arises in the present simultaneously with its present possession]. When [that potential] passes away, [its possession also passes away]. But [the possession of] the past [potential] continues to exist. That is, though [both] the original [potential and its possession] pass away [and become] past, [in the next moment, the possession of] that past [potential] arises again. The past here is provisionally defined as that which has passed away.49

---------------------

49 The possession of a particular dharma can be discriminated according to the following two modes: one from the perspective of the possessing subject (i.e., past, present or future); one from the perspective of the arising of the activity of the possessed dharma (i.e., prior, simultaneous or posterior). For example, the possession of a past dharma is said to be past if it arose in the past, i.e., prior to the present moment. From the perspective of the past dharma, however, that past possession may have arisen prior to it, simultaneously with it or posterior to it, and still be referred to as past possession. Therefore, the term 'past' here is not necessarily referred to as the past among the three time periods. See also Collet Cox, pp.55-58.
Commentary (889B.28-C.6)

I have briefly explained how these potentials should be acquired. Now I will explain [the relationship between the theory of possession (prāpti) of actions and] the three time periods.

1. Prātimokṣa-samvara


"It should be known that as long as one is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, [he/she will be able to] possess the potential [to perform wholesome actions] permanently" means that if one is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts at the present moment, [he/she will] necessarily possess a residual element of his/her actions (avijñapti-karma), [that is, the potential to perform wholesome actions (samvara)]. [As long as one follows the Buddhist precepts faithfully,] he/she will constantly possess the potential [to perform wholesome actions].

"Though [the present possession of the potential] is [momentarily] extinguished, [the possession of] the past [potential] arises [again]" means thus: [even though] one is
faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, [the present possession of] the potential [momentarily] passes away. [However,] the potential itself is not terminated, because the possession of the past [potential] arises [again]. The termination of this potential will be discussed later.
2. Manifested Action

AH (813C.9-14)

(10a-d) MANIFESTED [ACTION] CAN BE ESTABLISHED IN THE MIDDLE TIME SIMULTANEOUSLY [WITH ITS PRESENT POSSESSION].
IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT [THE POSSESSION OF THE PRESENT MANIFESTED ACTION] IS EXTINGUISHED; BUT [THE POSSESSION OF] THE PAST [MANIFESTED ACTION] CONTINUES TO EXIST.

[The verse says,] "Manifested [action] can be established in the middle time simultaneously [with its present possession]." Manifested body or speech-action arises in the present simultaneously with its present possession. The 'middle time' (antarā-adhvām) is provisionally defined as the present.

"It should be known that [the possession of present manifested action] is extinguished; but [the possession of] the past [manifested action] continues to exist" means thus: [the possession of present] manifested [action] passes away. In the next moment, however, the possession of that past [manifested action arises again and] continues to exist.
Commentary (889C.7-12)

(10a-d) MANIFESTED [ACTION] CAN BE ESTABLISHED IN THE MIDDLE
TIME SIMULTANEOUSLY [WITH ITS PRESENT POSSESSION].
IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT [THE POSSESSION OF THE
PRESENT MANIFESTED ACTION] IS EXTINGUISHED; BUT
[THE POSSESSION OF] THE PAST [MANIFESTED ACTION]
CONTINUES TO EXIST.

[The verse says,] "Manifested [action] can be established in
the middle time simultaneously [with its present
possession]." The 'middle time' (antarā-advāma) indicates
the present time. [For example,] while one is faithfully
following the Buddhist precepts, manifested body or speech-
action arises [in the present] simultaneously with its
present possession.

"It should be known that [the possession of present
manifested action] is extinguished; but [the possession of]
the past [manifested action] continues to exist" means thus:
manifested [action] is not able to continue to arise
[because each dharma is momentarily extinguished].
[Therefore,] the possession of the present [manifested
action momentarily passes away]. In the next moment,
[however], the possession of the past manifested [action]
arises [again]."
3. Dhyāna-samvara

AH (813B.15-24)

(11a-d) IF ONE PRACTICES MEDITATION, THE POSSESSION OF THE PAST AND FUTURE POTENTIAL ARISE.

"If one practices meditation (dhyāna), the possession of the past and future potential arise" means thus: if one practices meditation [successfully], he/she can attain the possession of the past and future Dhyāna-samvara. Why ? Just as one [is intent on] practicing meditation [in the present], the [future possession of] the potential [to practice meditation] will also arise.

"If one enters into the state of concentration (samādhi), [the possession of the potential of] the middle [time arises]" means thus: if one is [fully] concentrating on meditation in the present moment, [the possession of the present] potential [to perform wholesome actions] simultaneously arises. Why ? Because [this Dhyāna-samvara] is associated with one's concentration (samādhi).

"Manifested action is explained as mentioned above" means thus: if a manifested [action is performed by] one who is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, [a manifest body or speech-action arises] in the present simultaneously with its present possession; [the possession of present
manifested action is extinguished, but in the next moment
the possession of the past [manifested action] arises. [The
case of] manifested [action performed by] one who is
engaging in meditation is the same.
Commentary (889C.13-23)


"If one practices meditation, the possession of past and future potential arises" means thus: if one practices meditation [successfully], he/she can attain the possession of past and future Dhyāna-samvara. If one achieves meditation in the first moment, he/she can be released from the cyclic world of birth and death (samsāra) [simultaneously], and [in the next moment] the possession of the past Dhyāna-samvara arises.

"If one enters into the state of concentration (samādhi), [the possession of the potential of] the middle [time arises]" means thus: if one is [fully] concentrating on meditation at the present moment, [the possession of the present] potential [to perform wholesome actions] also arises. Because [this Dhyāna-samvara] is associated with one's mind (cittānuparivarttin).

[The verse says,] "Manifested action is explained as mentioned above." As above mentioned in the case of manifested [action performed by] one who is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, [manifested body or speech-action arises] in the present simultaneously with its
present possession; [the possession of present manifested action] is extinguished, but in the next moment the possession of the past [manifested action] arises. [The case of] manifested [action performed by] one who is engaging in meditation is the same.

Question: If one stays in the realm of form, how can the possession of manifested [action] arise?

Answer: When the World-Honored One (the Buddha) appears before them in the realm of form, various heavenly beings (deva) bow to [the Buddha] and walk around him from the left to the right; having performed [these manifested actions], in the next moment the possession of past manifested actions arises.
4. Anāsrava-samvara

AH (813B.25-C.3)

(12a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT IF ONE ACHIEVES THE PATH, THE FUTURE POSSESSION OF [POTENTIAL] WILL ALWAYS [ARISE].


"It should be known that if one achieves the path, the future possession of [potential] will always arise" means thus: because all noble individuals (ārya pudgala) are [achieving the noble path (ārya-mārga)], for them, the future possession of Anāsrava-samvara is certain [to arise]. Why? [All noble individuals possess] an uncontaminated mind (anāsrava-citta). The potential [of Anāsrava-samvara] is associated with [an uncontaminated mind] and, therefore, it is possessed [by all noble individuals].

"The path of middle [time] is [fully] associated with one's mind" means that if one has achieved the [noble] path and is completely absorbed in concentration in the present [moment], [the present] possession of Anāsrava-samvara simultaneously [arises].

"[The possession of the present potential] is extinguished, but [the possession of] the prior period continues to exist" means thus: 'the prior period' indicates
the past. The [possession of] potential [momentarily] passes away but the possession of the past [potential arises again]. [For example], whether a noble individual achieves a [higher] fruit or backslides [to a lower state, he/she still maintains his/her noble state]. [Therefore, for him/her] the possession of the past potential arises.
Commentary (889C.23-A.1)


"It should be known that if one achieves the path, the future possession of [potential] will always arise" means thus: all noble individuals are [achieving the noble path]; [therefore,] the future possession of Anāsrava-samvara will always [arise].

"The path of middle [time] is [fully] associated with one's mind" means that if one achieves the [noble] path at the present [moment], [the present] possession of Anāsrava-samvara simultaneously [arises].

"[The possession of the present potential] is extinguished, but [the possession of] the prior period continues to exist" means thus: 'the prior period' indicates the past. The [possession of] potential [momentarily] passes away but the possession of past [potential will arise again].
5. Unwholesome Actions

AH (813C.4-11)


"If those who have acquired the potential [to perform wholesome actions] perform unwholesome actions, [the possession of] the two arises" means thus: if one who has acquired Prātimoksha-samvāra, Dhyāna-samvāra and Anāsrava-samvāra performs an unwholesome [manifested action] because of his/her unwholesome passions (kleśa), at that moment the potential to perform unwholesome actions [simultaneously] arises. That is, both the possession of [present] unwholesome manifested action and [that of present] potential to perform unwholesome actions arise. If an unwholesome passion does not cause one to perform [unwholesome actions], the potential [to perform unwholesome actions] will not arise.

Question: How long will the possession [continue to exist]?

Answer: [The possession will continue to exist] as long as those passions remain. If those passions are not extinguished, he/she will preserve the potential [to perform}
unwholesome actions) (asamvara).

"It should be known that the possession is extinguished when those passions are abandoned" means that when those [unwholesome] passions are abandoned, the possession of both manifested [action] and its potential are also extinguished.
Commentary (890A.2-9)


"If those who have acquired the potential [to perform wholesome actions] perform unwholesome actions, [the possession of] the two arises" means thus: if one who has acquired Prātimokṣa-sāṃvara, Dhyāna-sāṃvara and Anāsrava-sāṃvara performs an unwholesome manifested or unmanifested action such as engaging in fighting because of his/her unwholesome passions (kleśa), the possession of manifested or unmanifested action simultaneously arises. This [type of person] is called 'one who is not free from passion' (avītarāga), because he/she still performs unwholesome actions.

Question: How long will the possession [continue to exist]? 

Answer: [The possession will continue to exist] as long as those passions remain. If those passions are not extinguished, he/she will preserve the potential [to perform unwholesome actions] (aśamvara).

"It should be known that the possession is extinguished when those passions are abandoned" means that when those
[unwholesome] passions are abandoned, the possession [of manifested or unmanifested action] is also extinguished.
6. Unwholesome Potential (asamvara)

AH (813C.12-21)


[The verse says], "If one [habitually] performs bad actions, the possession of the [unwholesome] potential in the middle [time arises]. Bad [action] brings about a painful effect."
If one habitually performs bad actions, he/she preserves the unwholesome potential, [that is, the potential to perform unwholesome actions]; the possession of the unwholesome potential simultaneously arises. It should be noted that bad action brings about a painful effect.

"Also [the possession of] the past [unwholesome potential] will arise [when the possession of the present unwholesome potential] is extinguished" means that [the possession of the past unwholesome potential] will not arise [until the present possession] is [completely] extinguished.

(15a-d) WHEN A MANIFESTED [ACTION] IS REALIZED, IT INDICATES THAT THE POSSESSION [OF MANIFESTED ACTION IN THE] MIDDLE [TIME ARISES].
ALSO, THOUGH [THE POSSESSION OF THE PRESENT MANIFESTED UNWHOLESOME ACTION IS EXTINGUISHED], [THE MANIFESTED UNWHOLESOME ACTION ITSELF] IS NEVER EXTINGUISHED.
[MANIFESTED] WHOLESOME [ACTION] IS DIFFERENT FROM THE ABOVE.
[The possession of] manifested [action] has previously been explained. [Therefore, the verse says,] "When manifested [unwholesome action] is realized, it indicates [the possession of] the present manifested-unwholesome action [simultaneously] arises. Also, though [the possession of the present manifested-unwholesome action] is extinguished, [the possession of] the past [one] will arise".

"Manifested wholesome action is different from the above" means that [for one who habitually performs bad actions, the possession of wholesome action is different from the above mentioned cases]. It should be understood that [even] for one who is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, [the possession of] unwholesome action exists. It is also explained that [even] for one who habitually performs bad actions, [the possession of] wholesome [action] arises as long as he/she holds a wholesome mind.
Commentary (890A.10-22)

(14a-d) if one [habitually] performs bad actions, the possession of the [unwholesome] potential in the middle [time arises]. Bad [action] brings about a painful effect. Though [the possession of the present unwholesome potential] is extinguished, [the potential itself] is never extinguished.

[The verse says], "If one [habitually] performs bad actions, the possession of the [unwholesome] potential in the middle [time arises]. Bad [action] brings about a painful effect." "One habitually performs bad actions" indicates such [action] as slaughter. [When he/she performs such an action], the possession of present unwholesome potential simultaneously arises. Thus, the unwholesome potential is constantly maintained.

"Though [the possession of the present unwholesome potential] is extinguished, [the potential itself] is never extinguished" means that [the possession of] the present [unwholesome] potential is extinguished, then [the possession of] the past [unwholesome potential] will arise. [Therefore, the potential itself] is never extinguished.

(15a-d) when manifested [action] takes place in the [present] moment, it indicates that the possession [of manifested action in the] middle [time] simultaneously [arises]. Though [the possession of the present manifested action is extinguished], [the manifested action
ITSELF IS NOT EXTINGUISHED. [MANIFESTED] WHOLESOME [ACTION] IS DIFFERENT FROM THE ABOVE.

"When manifested [action] takes place in the [present] moment, it indicates that the possession [of the manifested action in the] middle [time] simultaneously [arises]" means that for one who habitually performs bad actions, when he/she is performing a bad action in the present moment, the possession of the present, manifested [unwholesome action] simultaneously arises.

"Though [the possession of the present manifested action] is extinguished, [the manifested action itself] is not extinguished" means that the [possession] of the present manifested-unwholesome [action] is extinguished, because [only each dharma] exists momentarily. [But], the manifested-[unwholesome action itself] is never extinguished because [the possession of] the past one will arise [again].

"Manifested wholesome action is different from the above" means that [for one who habitually performs bad actions, the possession of wholesome action is different from the above-mentioned cases]. It should be understood that [even] for one who is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, [the possession of unwholesome action exists]. It is also explained that for one who habitually performs bad actions, [the possession of wholesome action arises as long as he/she holds a wholesome mind].
7. Intermediate State

AH (813.22-26)

(16a-d) IF ONE WHO IS IN AN INTERMEDIATE STATE PERFORMS AN ACTION, THE POSSESSION [OF THE ACTION IN] THE MIDDLE TIME [ARISES].


SOMETIMES [THE POSSESSION OF] BOTH ACTIONS [ARISES], AND AT OTHER TIMES [THE POSSESSION OF] ONE [ACTION ARISES].

The intermediate state indicates that he/she is neither following the Buddhist precepts faithfully, nor is [habitually] performing bad actions. For one who is in this state, if a wholesome [mind] arises, [his/her actions] are considered to be a wholesome [action]. In this case, both manifested and unmanifested as well as both wholesome and unwholesome actions arise. [But, for one who is in the intermediate state], only manifested action [which can be] either wholesome or unwholesome [arises].

-------------------

50 This indicates the potential acquired through the action done without firm intent. This potential is called neither wholesome nor unwholesome potential (naivasamvara-nāsamvara).
Commentary (890A.23-B.3)

(16a-d) IF ONE WHO IS IN AN INTERMEDIATE STATE PERFORMS AN ACTION, THE POSSESSION [OF THE ACTION IN] THE MIDDLE TIME [ARISES].
SOMETIMES [THE POSSESSION OF] BOTH ACTIONS [ARISES], AND AT OTHER TIMES [THE POSSESSION OF] ONE [ACTION ARISES].

[The verse says,] "If one who is in an intermediate state performs an action, [the possession of the action in] the middle time [arises]." The intermediate state indicates that one is neither faithfully following the Buddhist precepts nor is [habitually] performing bad actions. If a wholesome [action arises] from [his/her wholesome] mind, but [the wholesome mind] is not perfectly pure (prasāda), the possession of a present wholesome action arises. When an unwholesome [action arises from his/her unwholesome mind], but [the unwholesome mind] does not contain an extremely unwholesome proclivity (paryavasthāna), the possession of a present unwholesome action [still] arises.

"[The possession of the present action] is extinguished but [the possession of] the past action arises again" indicates thus: although [the possession of the present action] is extinguished, [the action itself] is not extinguished. [The possession of] the present [action] does not [exist any longer], but [in the next moment, the
possession of] the past [action] will arise. In this way, [each dharma] is a momentary event.

"Sometimes, [the possession of] both actions [arises]" indicates that if his/her mind is perfectly pure or if it contains an extremely unwholesome proclivity, [just as a wholesome action or an unwholesome action,] both the possession of a present manifested and the possession of a present unmanifested potential arise.

"At other times, [the possession of] one [action arises]" means thus: [once a manifested action is performed,] in the next moment, the possession of of the present unmanifested potential [simultaneously] arises. The relationship between [the possession of] the present and [that of] the past should be understood as the wholesome and unwholesome [unmanifested potentials].
8. Indeterminate Action

Commentary (890B.4-12)*

(17a-d) IN THESE TWO INDETERMINATE MANIFESTED ACTIONS, CONTAMINATED AND UNCONTAMINATED, [THE POSSESSION OF] THE PAST [ACTION] DOES NOT ARISE. IT IS EXPLAINED THAT PURE AND IMPURE ACTIONS AS WELL AS ANY OTHER ACTIONS WILL NOT ARISE [IN THE FUTURE].

"In these two indeterminate manifested actions, contaminated and uncontaminated, [the possession of] past [action] does not arise" means thus: present action arises [simultaneously] with its present possession; [an action] is a momentary event. [When the present possession is extinguished, in the next moment, the possession of] the past [indeterminate action] never arises because contaminated-indeterminate and uncontaminated-indeterminate manifested actions are not strong enough to remain and produce [new actions].

It is also explained that the indeterminate [mind is not strong enough to produce manifested action] together with unmanifested potential.

"It is explained that pure and impure actions as well as any other actions will not arise [in the future]" means thus: from manifested actions, i.e., wholesome, unwholesome, contaminated-indeterminate and uncontaminated-indeterminate, the possession of all these future [manifested actions] does
not arise [automatically]. [That is, the possession of] a manifested action in the future does not arise [until the manifested action actually takes place].\textsuperscript{51}

\textsuperscript{51}The same discussion is found in the \textit{AK}, P.66.6-8.
IV. The Wholesome Potential & The Unwholesome Potential

1. The Wholesome Potential and The Unwholesome Potential

Commentary (890B.12-C.3)*

Question: What is the wholesome potential (samvara), and what is the unwholesome potential (asamvara)?

Answer:

(18a-d) FOR ALL SENTIENT BEINGS, IF ONE CONTINUOUSLY FOLLOWS WHOLESALE AND UNWHOLESALE [BUDDHIST] PRECEPTS, WHOLESALE AND UNWHOLESALE POTENTIALS [ARISE].

[One of the wholesome potentials] is Pratimoksa-samvara. For all sentient beings, if one is ordained [and is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, the wholesome] potential, [that is, the potential to perform wholesome actions], continually arises for his/her entire life. [The wholesome potential] is always co-related to [manifested action] and is classified into twelve or twenty-one types. 52

The unwholesome potential which applies to all sentient

----------

52 Twelve kinds of actions: In these four kinds of actions, that is, manifested body-action, unmanifested body-action, manifested speech-action and unmanifested speech-action; each action is further classified into three: higher, middle and lower actions. Twenty-one kinds of actions: Three wholesome manifested-actions: (1) not killing sentient beings, (2) not stealing and (3) not committing sexual misconduct being; four wholesome manifested speech-actions: (4) speaking honestly, (5) not using malicious words, (6) not using harsh words and (7) not talking senselessly; each one of these seven actions is further classified into three: higher, middle and lower.
beings implies that if one constantly performs unwholesome actions, and unwholesome potential, [that is, the potential to perform unwholesome actions], continually arises for his/her entire life.

Question: What are unwholesome, habitual actions?

Answer: Unwholesome, habitual actions (or occupations) are of twelve types: (1) sheep farming (aurabhrika); (2) chicken farming (kaukkutika); (3) hog farming (saukarika); (4) bird-hunting (śākunika); (5) fishing (mātsika); (6) hunting (lubdhaka); (7) banditry (cauryaka); (8) executioner (vadhaka); (9) snake charmer (nāgabandhaka); (10) jailer (bandhanapālaka); (11) dog-killing and (12) hunter. 53

Sheep farming indicates killing sheep, i.e., one raises and sells sheep with intention to kill them and [then actually] kills them. [In this manner,] chicken farming and hog farming are the same.

Bird-hunting indicates that one is engaging in killing birds for his/her living. Fishing and hunting are the same.

Banditry is the act of continually committing robbery for one's livelihood. An executioner kills people for a living. A jailer oversees prisoners and a snake charmer teaches a snake tricks with music for the

53 These twelve types of occupations are also explained in the Saṅgītiparyāya (Taisho, 26,406B.14-C.1); the MVS, (Taisho 27, 507A.25-B.14) and so on.
entertainment of others. A dog killer (here) indicates 'Candāla' (meaning an out-caste). A hunter (here) indicates one who engages in the hunting of animals (especially) for a king.

As for the sheep farmer, even if he/she does not kill other sentient beings, (his/her action is as unwholesome as killing) any sentient being, and he/she acquires an unwholesome potential (asamvara). That is, if any other sentient being were to appear as a sheep in front of the sheep farmer, he/she would be intent on harming it. (There is the possibility that) another sentient being could become a sheep (in the next life). Even if no sentient being becomes a sheep (in the next life), the sheep farmer still is intent on harming a sentient being (i.e., a sheep); after all. (Therefore,) he/she acquires the unwholesome potential (through his/her unwholesome habitual actions). (The opposite) situation would be that he/she would be merciful to all (sentient beings).

An unwholesome potential is also acquired through other unwholesome, habitual actions. It should also be noted that, even for kings and judges, if he/she has a harmful mind, an unwholesome potential necessarily arises.
2. The Effective Period of Potential

Commentary (890C.3-18)*

Question: How long does the effective period of an unwholesome potential remain?

(19a-d) THE WHOLESOME POTENTIAL WHICH IS ACQUIRED THROUGH FOLLOWING THE BUDDHIST PRECEPTS FAITHFULLY REMAINS EITHER FOR HIS/HER ENTIRE LIFE OR FOR AN ENTIRE DAY. UNWHOLESOME POTENTIAL REMAINS FOR HIS/HER ENTIRE LIFE. BOTH NEVER REMAINS LONGER [THAN HIS/HER LIFE].

[The verse says,] "The wholesome potential which is acquired through following the Buddhist precepts faithfully remains either for his/her entire life or for an entire day." Prātimoksa-samvara is acquired in two ways: [First, this potential is acquired] by seven types of Buddhists [and remains] until they die. The seven types of Buddhists are: (1) bhikṣu (a Buddhist monk); (2) bhikṣunī (a Buddhist nun); (3) śīkṣamāṇā (an apprentice nun); (4) śrāmanera (a male novice); (5) śrāmanerikā (a female novice); (6) upāsaka (a faithful layman) and (7) upāsikā (a faithful laywoman).54 [Second,] for a lay person, if he/she follows the [special] eight precepts (upavāsa) for an entire day, [the

54 MVS (Taisho, 27, 607A) explains these seven kinds of Buddhists in detail.
wholesome potential also remains for an entire day]. In this way, Prātimokṣa-saṃvara remains for these two periods: for an entire life or an entire day.

Question: What about unwholesome potential?

Answer: [The verse says,] "Unwholesome potential remains for his/her entire life." The unwholesome potential [which is acquired through habitually unwholesome actions] remains until he/she dies. It never happens that [this potential] remains for only a day.

Question: Prātimokṣa-saṃvara is maintained [by a lay person] for only a day. Why does it never happen that the unwholesome potential remains for only a day?

Answer: An [unwholesome potential] is not acquired [through the Buddhist precepts]. A wholesome potential can be acquired [through the Buddhist precepts], and [he/she] willingly follows [the Buddhist precepts]. However, no one willingly [performs unwholesome actions], and no one says, "I want to acquire an unwholesome potential for a day."

"Neither remain longer [than his/her life]" means that

55 These eight precepts are explained in the Suttanipāta: (1) not killing sentient beings; (2) not stealing; (3) not telling a lie; (4) not drinking alcohol; (5) not committing sexual misconduct; (6) not eating anything at night; (7) not wearing flower and perfume and lying on a carpet laid directly on the earth. Suttanipāta, II, 14, "Dhammika-sutta", vv. pp.400-403.
both wholesome potential and unwholesome potential [remain only until he/she dies and that period] is never extended. One may hope [to curtail the effective period of] a wholesome [potential] or an unwholesome [potential by performing unwholesome actions or wholesome actions] for half a month, a month or half an year, but he/she will not ultimately be able to curtail [these effective periods]. As above mentioned, [Prātimokṣa-samvara] is acquired in two ways: [if a lay person follows the special eight Buddhist precepts (upavāsa), he/she can maintain Prātimokṣa-samvara for only a day]. This potential lasts for only a day, and this period is never extended.
3. The Acquisition of Potential

A. Pratimokṣa-samvara

Commentary (890C.18-891B.16)*

Question: How is Pratimokṣa-samvara acquired?

Answer:

(20a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT PRATIMOKṢA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED THROUGH MANIFESTED ACTIONS. ACCORDING TO ONE'S LOWER, MIDDLE OR HIGHER MIND, THREE TYPES OF POTENTIAL ARE ACQUIRED.

"It should be known that Pratimokṣa-samvara is acquired through manifested actions" means that Pratimokṣa-samvara is acquired through manifested actions in various ways: through samgha, people and dharma. Samgha indicates that he/she has been admitted as a member of the Buddhist community (jñāpti-caturtham-karma)\(^{56}\) and is following the Buddhist precepts. People [particularly] indicates Buddhist monks (bhikṣu). Dharma indicates the Buddha and his five [direct] disciples.

In the Vinaya-vibhāṣā,\(^{57}\) ten types of ordination

\(^{56}\)If one wants to become a member of the Buddhist community, he/she first has to declare, "I want to become a member". Only after being conferred by other members three times, is, then, one finally able to become a member of the community. This decision-making process is called 'jñāpti-caturtham-karma'. See, Sukumar Dutt, Buddhist Monks and Monasteries of India, (London: George Allen & Unwin, 1962), pp.89-90.

\(^{57}\)Shih-sung lu (Taisho, 23, 410A.10ff).
(upasampadā) are explained: (1) The Buddha was ordained by himself; (2) the Buddha's five disciples who achieved "arhatship" were ordained by themselves; (3) Yaśas and others were beckoned by the Buddha and received his proclamation, "Indeed, you are a monk" as an ordination; (4) Māhākāśyapa fully relied on the Buddha and was ordained by himself; (5) Sodayin answered the Buddha's questions well and ordained himself; (6) Mahāprajāpatī (the Buddha's aunt) [was allowed, as an exception, to become a nun and] was given the special codes of conduct\(^{58}\); (7) a monk was ordained by the Buddha's messenger; (8) in a remote area, [where the Buddhist community consisted of] more than five monks [they ordained themselves]; (9) in the central region [cf India (near Gangis river)], [where the Buddhist community consisted of] more than ten monks [they ordained themselves] and (10) one was ordained by chanting "I take refuge in the Buddha, the Dharma and the Saṅgha".

Question: What types of potential are there?

Answer: [The verse says,] "According to one's lower, middle and higher mind, three types of potential are acquired."

For one who has a lower mind, but faithfully follows the Buddhist precepts, he/she [still] will acquire a lower

potential as the effect of his/her lower mind. Even if he/she takes great pains to perform wholesome actions, is free from any desire in the realm of form and formlessness and tries to plant a seed of bodhisattva [in his/her mind], still, one's own corporeal body remains, as well as his/her lower mind.

For one who has a middle mind, but faithfully follows the Buddhist precepts, he/she will acquire a middle potential. Even if he/she takes great pains to perform wholesome actions or tries to perform bad actions without abandoning the Buddhist code of conduct, his/her middle mind still remains.

For one who has a higher mind, and faithfully follows the Buddhist precepts, he/she will acquire a higher potential. Also both his/her body and his/her higher mind will remain. It is possible for even a young monk to acquire the higher potential. On the other hand, an arhat could acquire the lower potential.

As for the Prātimokṣa-sāṃvara, a lower potential might be transformed into a middle one and a middle one might transformed into a higher one. That is, for one who has a lower mind, he/she must first follow the Buddhist precepts designed for lay-men (upāsaka-sāṃvara)\(^{59}\). Then, after

\(^{59}\) A lay-person has to avoid these following five actions: (1) murder; (2) theft; (3) sexual misconduct; (4) falsehood and (5) intoxication. See AK, p.206.22ff.
achieving a middle mind, he/she will follow the Buddhist precepts designed for novices (śrāmanera-samvara). Finally, after achieving a higher mind, he/she will follow the Buddhist precepts designed for monks (bhikṣu-samvara).

[Likewise] a middle potential might be transformed into a lower or a higher one. Also a higher potential might be transformed into a lower or a middle one. That is, [each] potential [is acquired by each] sentient being. This sentient being means that which is wriggling, (i.e., an animal). [Seven] items such as not killing and talking honestly [are listed as essentially wholesome body-actions and speech-actions]. The cause [of each potential] is either one's lower, middle or higher mind. [A higher mind] is also explained as [such wholesome mental states as] non-greed (alobha), non-anger (advesa) and right view.

60 A novice has to avoid the following ten actions: (1) murder; (2) theft; (3) incontinence; (4) falsehood; (5) intoxication; (6) the use of scents, garlands and ointment; (7) pertaking in dance, song and music; (8) to use big and gorgeous bed; (9) taking a meal at an improper time and (10) accepting gold and silver. See AK, p.206.22ff.

61 A monk has to avoid all items of actions which are to be avoided. See AK, p.206.22ff.

62 Seven items are: (1) not killing; (2) not stealing; (3) not committing sexual misconduct; (4) not lying; (5) non-slander; (6) non-harsh speech and (7) non-senseless talk. In the Buddhist precepts for monks, All these items are included in bhikṣu-samvara. But in śrāmanera-samvara and upāsaka-samvara, all seven items are not included. See, Kokuyaku issaikyo, vol. 20, p.136.
(amoha). [Various cases will now be explained.]

(1) If a sentient being neither follows all [seven] items [of the Buddhist precepts] nor has all [three] causes (i.e., three types of mind), [he/she will obtain either] a lower, [a middle, a higher or two of the three types of mind], and will follow either the Buddhist precepts designed for laymen or for novices; (2) if a sentient being follows all [seven] items [of the Buddhist precepts] but does not have all [three] causes, [he/she will obtain] either a lower, a middle, a higher or two of the three [types of mind], and will follow [all] three types of Buddhist precepts (i.e., the Buddhist precepts designed for laymen, novices and monks); (3) if a sentient being follows all [seven] items [of the Buddhist precepts] and has all [three] causes, [he/she will obtain all] three types of mind and will follow [all] three types of Buddhist precepts; (4) [as the fourth, one might think of a case in which] a sentient being has all [three causes] but does not follow all [seven] items [of the Buddhist precepts]. But, [actually] there is no such case.

[One might think that] one who obtains a lower mind would first follow [the special eight] precepts [for laymen (upavāsa), which maintains the potential] for an entire day. Then, after achieving a middle mind, he/she would follow the Buddhist precepts designed for laymen. Finally, after
achieving a higher mind, he/she would follow the Buddhist precepts designed for novices. [This would be a case in which] a sentient being has all [three causes] but does not follow all [seven] items [of the Buddhist precepts]. But this [scenario] is non-existent for [the essential issue here] is [a potential which] remains for one's entire life.

Question: By what type of mind is Prātimokṣa-samvara acquired?

Answer: [Prātimokṣa-samvara is acquired by] a merciful mind toward all [kinds of] sentient beings. I might say, "I can accept [showing mercy] to this [kind of sentient being] but I cannot accept [showing mercy to] another [kind]." [In this case,] the potential is not acquired because [I still] maintain an evil mind. I might also say, "I can accept not hunting beasts." The potential cannot be acquired through this wholesome action either, because [I still have] discriminative [thought]. [Moreover,] Prātimokṣa-samvara, the potential [to perform wholesome actions], concerns not only [sentient beings who are] able [to perform unwholesome actions] but also [sentient beings who] are not able [to perform unwholesome actions], because [a sentient being who is] able [to perform unwholesome actions] might be born into a situation [where he/she is] not able [to perform unwholesome actions]; [a sentient being who is] not able [to perform unwholesome actions] might be born into a situation
(where he/she is) able [to perform unwholesome actions]. If this is not so, then, there exists a contradiction: the potential [to perform wholesome actions toward sentient beings who are able to perform unwholesome actions] would be more sinful than [that toward sentient beings who are not able to perform unwholesome actions].

[Objection]: There is an objection [to the above-mentioned statement]. Prātimokṣa-sāṃvara [must be acquired and terminated on certain occasions. But, according to the above-mentioned statement,] Prātimokṣa-sāṃvara [seems to be] acquired even when one does not accept [following the Buddhist precepts]; it [also seems to be] terminated whenever one intends to terminate it.

[Answer: It should be noted that Prātimokṣa-sāṃvara] is acquired by a sentient being who obtains [his/her certain situation, such as,] aggregate (skandha), sphere (āyatana) and component (dhātu) in the present time. [The aggregate, sphere and component of] the past and future [can be recognized only as] dharmas. [Therefore, the objects of the past and future] are not relevant [to Prātimokṣa-sāṃvara]. We will [explain in detail] by employing the [following] four categories.

(1) If one's aggregate, sphere and component are in the present, [an actual action (maula-karmapatha) which]
includes its preparation (pravoga) and result (prṣṭha)\textsuperscript{63} causes the rejection of sin (pratikṣepeṇa-sāvadya),\textsuperscript{64} Prātimokṣa-samvara is acquired, but neither Dhyāna-samvara nor Anāsrava-samvara are acquired; (2) if one's aggregate, sphere and component are in the past and future, [only] an actual action arises, both Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara are acquired but Prātimokṣa-samvara is not acquired; (3) if one's aggregate, sphere and component are in the present, an actual action arises, Prātimokṣa-samvara, Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara are acquired, and (4) if one's aggregate, sphere and component are in the past and future, the preparation and consequence of an action arises [but an actual action does not arise], neither Prātimokṣa-samvara, Dhyāna-samvara nor Anāsrava-samvara are acquired.

[As for the termination of Prātimokṣa-samvara, one might compare it to the relationship between] grass and [hay:] when [grass] is dried, [it becomes hay] and is no longer [grass]. [But actually, it is still] grass, [but in the form of hay]. [In this way, even if] a sentient being [who is] able [to perform unwholesome actions is born into a situation where he/she is] not able [to perform unwholesome

\textsuperscript{63}An action of the present includes a preparatory (pravoga) action, an actual action (maula-karmapatha) and its result (prṣṭha). See AK, p.239.11ff.

\textsuperscript{64}See AK, p. 218.14ff.
actions, this sentient being,) before and after, is the same. [But, hay] no longer [has the same] quality [as] grass. And accordingly, an arhat who has achieved complete emancipation (nirvāna) no longer has [the same] quality [as ordinary persons]. This will be extensively explained in the chapter, 'Miscellaneous' (Samyukta-varga).65

65 MAS (Taisho, 28, 946B.1ff)
B. Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara

AH (813C.26-814A.6)

Question: How is the potential in the realm of form acquired and terminated? Is the potential acquired through the four types of meditation or through other practices?

Answer: [It is] not [acquired] only through the four types of meditation.

(17a-d) **DHYANA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED BY A WHOLESOME MIND IN THE REALM OF FORM. IF ONE LOSES THIS [MIND, THE POTENTIAL] IS ALSO TERMINATED.** **ANASRAVA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED BY SIX TYPES OF MIND.**

[The verse says,] "Dhyāna-samvara is acquired by a wholesome mind in the realm of form." If one who obtains a wholesome mind in the realm of form is free from desire or is [still] not [free from desire], for all of them, the potential of the realm of form (i.e., Dhyāna-samvara) is [necessarily] acquired. Why? All [of them obtain] a wholesome mind in the realm of form, and [this mind] is always co-related to the potential [to perform wholesome actions].

Question: How is this potential terminated?

Answer: [As the verse says,] "If one loses [this mind, the potential] is also terminated."

Question: How is Anāsrava-samvara acquired?

Answer: [The verse says,] "Anāsrava-samvara is acquired by six types of mind." Anāsrava-samvara [is linked to] the
six levels [of meditative states], and is acquired [by each mind in these states]. The six levels [of meditative states] are: the level of 'anāgāmya', the level of 'intermediate meditation' and four types of meditation [in the realm of form].

Question: How is [this potential] terminated?

Answer: If one loses [each one of these states, this potential] is also terminated.

66 See the translation, Section III-3, pp. 163-166.
Commentary (891B.16-C.21)

We have already explained Pratimoksa-samvara.

Question: What about Dhyana-samvara?

Answer:

(21a-d) DHYANA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED BY A WHOLESOME MIND IN THE REALM OF FORM. IF ONE LOSES THIS [MIND, THE POTENTIAL] IS ALSO TERMINATED. ANASRAVA-SAMVARA IS ACQUIRED BY SIX TYPES OF MIND.

[The verse says,] "Dhyana-samvara is acquired by a wholesome mind in the realm of form." If one obtains a wholesome mind in the realm of form, he/she can acquire Dhyana-samvara. This potential is always co-related to [all types of] wholesome mind in the realm of form. [However,] [the following] six [types of] mind are exceptions: (1)-(3) a mind [which arises from] the cognition by three sense organs (i.e., visible form, sound and odor) at the first meditative state [among the four types of meditative states in the realm of form]; (4) a mind [which arises from] listening to the truth; (5) a mind [which] causes [the performance of wholesome or indeterminate body and speech] actions, and (6) a mind at the time of death.67 [These types of minds] are not fixed. A mind [which arises from] the cognition by three sense organs (i.e., visible form, sound and odor) is

67See also MVS (Taisho, 27, 82C.18ff).
extroverted [and is not yet fixed in meditation]. So is a mind [which] causes [the performance of wholesome or indeterminate body and speech] actions. A mind [which arises from] listening to the truth causes [one to consider] names and situations, [and is not yet fixed in meditation]. A mind at the time of death is too weak [to be fixed in meditation]. [Only] a mind [which is] fixed [in meditation] is always co-related to the potential [to perform wholesome actions].

[Even] in the second, third and fourth meditative states [in the realm of form], two types of un-fixed minds [remain]: a mind [which arises from] listening to the truth and a mind at the time of death.68

Question: Why is there no potential [to perform wholesome actions] in the realm of formlessness?

Answer: The potential [to perform wholesome actions] is a [material] form. There are neither the four great elements nor [material] form in the realm of formlessness. If the four great elements were in the realm of formlessness, the potential would also exist. But, there are not [the great elements]. [Moreover,] the potential is [acquired] as an obstacle (pratipakṣa) to perform unwholesome actions. [Particularly] in the realm of desire, there is an element [which causes one] to perform unwholesome actions. But, in the realm of formlessness, no such element exists. Because
[if one enters into] the realm of formlessness, [the following] four [elements which cause one to perform unwholesome actions in the realm of desire] are abandoned: (1) [dharma which arise] based on [the body in the realm of desire] (āśraya-dūratā); (2) dispositions [in the realm of desire] (ākāra-dūratā); (3) any dharmas [in the realm of desire] (ālambana-dūratā) and (4) [passions and potentials to perform unwholesome actions in the realm of desire] (pratipakṣa-dūratā).68

Now, one [can obtain certain types of] knowledge in [each of] the four meditative states [in the realm of form].69 [Certain] passions are eliminated [in certain states], though, he/she is [still] able to remove [remaining] passions, and attain emancipation (ādhāra-pratipakṣa). Thus, he/she is able to perform right conduct (dūrībhāva-pratipakṣa). If one obtains 'the knowledge of suffering' (duhkhe dharma jñāna) and 'the knowledge about the cause of suffering' (samudaye dharma jñāna) at a certain state among the four types of meditative states [in the realm of form], he/she is able to realize the first and

---

67MVS (Taisho, 27, 82C.22ff).
68AK, p.201.12ff.
69AK, p.350.12ff. See also Paul Griffiths, Indian Buddhist Meditation, pp.312-329.
second truths [among the Four Noble Truths] as well as various falsehoods [in the world] (vidūṣana-pratipakṣa). At the state of anāgamyā, certain passions are removed (prahāna-pratipakṣa). If one obtains 'the knowledge about the suppression of suffering' (nīrodha dharmajñāna) and 'the knowledge of the way of truth' (mārga dharmajñāna) [at a certain state among] the four types of meditative states [in the realm of form], he/she is able to attain an uncontaminated (anāsrava) [meditative state]. Therefore, he/she no longer needs to realize the first and second truths [among the Four Noble Truths] as well as various falsehoods [in the world].

Question: How is [the potential] terminated?

Answer: [The verse says,] "If one loses this [mind, the potential] is also terminated." If one loses a mind in the realm of form, the potential (Dhyāna-samvara) is also terminated. [Dhyāna-samvara is always] co-related to one's mind.

Question: How is Anāsrava-samvara acquired?

Answer: [The verse says,] "Anāsrava-samvara is acquired by six types of mind." Anāsrava-samvara [is linked to] six levels [of meditative states in the realm of form] and is acquired by a mind [in these states]. [Six levels are]: the level of anāgamyā; the level of intermediate meditation and four types of meditation [in the realm of form]. Through
these six levels [of meditative states], the path of vision (darśana-mārga) is achieved.\textsuperscript{70} Higher states [in the realm of formlessness] no longer concerns [Anāsrava-samvara].

If one attains the state of anāgamyā and enters into the path of vision, [he/she can] acquire [Anāsrava-samvara] only at the level [of anāgamyā]. If one attains the full comprehension of the Four Noble Truths (abhisamaya)\textsuperscript{71} and obtains 'the knowledge about the secular world' (samvṛti-jñāna)\textsuperscript{72}, he/she [acquires Anāsrava-samvara] at the [following] two levels: at the level of anāgamyā and the realm of desire. If one attains the fourth meditative state [among the four types of meditative states in the realm of form] and achieves the path of vision, [he/she can acquire Anāsrava-samvara at each of] the six levels. If he/she [also] attains the full comprehension of the Four Noble Truths, [he/she can acquire Anāsrava-samvara] at [the following] seven levels: [at each of six levels and the realm of desire].

Question: Why does the path of vision not exist in the realm of formlessness?

Answer: [In the realm of formlessness, there is no path

\textsuperscript{70}AK, p.350.12ff. See Also Griffiths, pp.312-329.

\textsuperscript{71}AK, p. 328.1ff

\textsuperscript{72}AK, p. 392.1ff.
of vision] because there is no element [to realize the Four Noble Truths], such as, 'the patience to understand the doctrine of suffering' (duḥkhe-dharmajñāna-ksānti) and 'the knowledge of the doctrine of suffering' (duḥkhe dharmajñāna)73; there are no wholesome roots (kuśala-mūla); there is neither the potential [to perform wholesome actions nor the potential to perform unwholesome actions], and [the realm of formlessness] is [completely] isolated from the realm of desire.

Question: What is the difference between Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara?

Answer: Dhyāna-samvara is [still] contaminated (mala) [by passions]. In Anāsrava-samvara, the contamination [of passions] is [completely] eradicated.

Moreover, Dhyāna-samvara [is acquired at four] meditative states [in which one is still contaminated by passions and in which one is completely uncontaminated by passions]. Anāsrava-samvara [is acquired at] all meditative states [in which one is completely] uncontaminated [by passions].

[I will now explain the difference between the two in detail] by employing the [following] four categories: (1) the potential which is Dhyāna-samvara but is not Anāsrava-

73 The initial stage of the path of vision pertains to the Four Noble Truths in the realm of desire.
samvara is a secular (samvriti) potential [and is acquired at] the four meditative states [in the realm of form]; (2) the potential which is Anāsrava-samvara but is not Dhyāna-samvara is an uncontaminated (anāsrava) potential [and is acquired at either] the state of anāgamya or the state of intermediate meditation; (3) the potential which is [both] Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara is an uncontaminated potential [and is acquired at] the four meditative states [in the realm of form]; (4) The potential which is neither Dhyāna-samvara nor Anāsrava-samvara indicates that it is a secular potential [and is acquired at either] the state of anāgamya or the state of intermediate meditation.
C. Unwholesome Potential

Commentary (891C.21-892A.28)*

Question: How is the unwholesome potential (asamvare) acquired?

Answer:

(22a-d) UNWHOLESOME POTENTIAL IS ACQUIRED BY MANIFESTED ACTIONS AND STATEMENTS. ACCORDING TO ONE’S LOWER, MIDDLE OR HIGHER MIND, THREE TYPES OF POTENTIAL ARE ACQUIRED.

[The verse says,] "Unwholesome potential is acquired by manifested actions and statements." Unwholesome potential is acquired by two causes: manifested actions and statements.

If one were born into a family in which [the family members] were habitually performing unwholesome actions, but he/she had not yet performed a manifested action such as killing sentient beings, he/she would not acquire an unwholesome potential. As soon as he/she were to kill sentient beings, he/she would acquire an unwholesome potential.

'Statement' indicates thus: if one who were born into a family [in which the family members were not habitually performing unwholesome actions] were to make [the following statement], "I will perform this [unwholesome] action for my livelihood", at that moment he/she would acquire an unwholesome potential.
Question: What does 'habitually performing unwholesome actions' [really] mean? [Does it indicate that he/she] performs [all unwholesome body and speech actions] 74 or not?

Answer: A [master in Gandhāra] may explain that [even if one] does not perform [all unwholesome body and speech actions], he/she is still referred to as 'one who habitually performs unwholesome actions'. That is, if one were born into a family in which the family members had been habitually performing unwholesome actions and, [this person] were unable to speak [e.g., a mute], he/she would not acquire the [essential] nature of [manifested] speech-action. [However,] even he/she [would still be able to] kill sentient beings and could acquire the [essential] nature of [manifested] body-action. 75

[Kashmir]-Vaibhāṣikas, [however, do not agree with this]. They explain thus: [Only] one who performs all wholesome [body and speech] actions is referred to as 'one who acquires a wholesome potential'. Unwholesome potential is the same. But, even if one who were born into a family in which the family members were habitually performing unwholesome actions were unable to speak, he/she could be

74 All unwholesome body and speech actions indicate: three body-actions: killing, theft and sexual misconduct; four speech-actions: telling lies, malicious words, harsh words and senseless talk.

75 MVS (Taisho, 27, 608B.21ff).
intent on performing unwholesome [actions] and could manifest the intent as a speech-action through his/her body-actions. [Therefore,] he/she would acquire an unwholesome potential through [various manifested actions].

Question: If one who is habitually performing unwholesome actions follows the [special] precepts for only a day (upavāsa), he/she could acquire a wholesome potential. At that time, his/her unwholesome potential would be terminated. [But,] the wholesome potential would be terminated by the next day. [If the time comes,] would he/she [automatically] acquire the unwholesome potential again?

Answer: A [master in Gandhāra] may answer, "Yes." [It is explained that] a wholesome potential is acquired whenever the unwholesome potential is terminated; an unwholesome is acquired whenever the wholesome potential is terminated.

The others (Kashmir-Vaibhāṣika) may answer, "No." [It is explained that] if a certain kind of sentient being does not [perform any unwholesome actions], such as killing sentient beings and so on, until he/she dies, he/she will never acquire an unwholesome potential. The reason is that

\[76 \text{MVS, (Taisho, 27, 608B.24ff).}\]

\[77 \text{ibid., (Taisho, 27, 608B.29ff).}\]
he/she neither performs any [unwholesome] manifested [action] nor makes a statement [to perform unwholesome action]. An unwholesome potential is not [automatically] acquired whenever one's wholesome potential is terminated. [For acquiring an unwholesome potential, he/she must make a statement to perform an essentially unwholesome action and actually must perform it. A wholesome potential is likewise:] a wholesome potential is not [automatically] acquired whenever one's unwholesome potential is terminated.78

Question: Now, how is the unwholesome potential acquired?

Answer: [The verse says,] "According to one's lower, middle and higher mind, three types of unwholesome potential are acquired." If one who first obtains a lower mind kills a sentient being or [is asked by someone to do so and] accept, a lower, unseen power (avijñāpti) to kill a sentient being [will arise], and he/she will acquire a lower unwholesome potential (asamvara). That is, he/she will acquire an unwholesome potential [to kill] a sentient being. If he/she, after achieving either a middle or a higher mind, [still] kills a sentient being, he/she will acquire either a middle or a higher, unseen power to kill a sentient

78 MVS, (Taisho, 27, 508C.3ff).
being. [In this way, even if this action] arises from either a middle or a higher [mind], an unwholesome potential has already been acquired [and has been maintained since he/she obtained a lower mind and killed a sentient being]. [Various cases of] habitually performing unwholesome actions [will now be explained.]

(1) If a sentient being neither performs all [seven] items [of essentially unwholesome actions] nor has all [three] causes (i.e., three types of unwholesome proclivity: lower; middle and higher), [he/she will obtain either] a lower, a middle or a higher unwholesome proclivity, and will kill a sentient being, but will not perform other essentially [unwholesome] actions; (2) if a sentient being performs all [seven] items but does not have all [three] causes, [he/she will obtain] either a lower, a middle or a higher unwholesome proclivity, and will [perform all seven essentially unwholesome actions] such as killing a sentient being and speaking harshly; (3) if a sentient being has all [three] causes but does not perform all [seven] items, [he/she will obtain lower, middle and higher unwholesome proclivities, and will kill a sentient being, but will not [perform] other essentially [unwholesome] actions; (4) if a sentient being performs all [seven] items and has all [three] causes, [he/she will obtain] lower, middle and higher unwholesome proclivities, and will [perform all seven
essentially unwholesome actions] such as killing a sentient being and speaking harshly.

A (Kashmir-Vaibhāṣika) explains thus: 'habitually performing unwholesome actions' indicates that a sentient being [performs] all [seven] items and though their causes are not certain, [he/she will still] acquire an unwholesome potential. ⁷⁹

--------------------

⁷⁹MVS (Taisho, 27, 608A.2ff).
4. The Termination of Potential

A. Prātimokṣa-samvara; Dhyāna-samvara & Anāsrava-samvara

AH (814A.6-13)

Question: On which occasions are these potentials (sāmvara) terminated?

Answer:

(18a-d) PRATIMOKṢA-SAMVARA IS TERMINATED ON FIVE OCCASIONS. THE BUDDHA EXPLAINS THAT DHYĀNA-SAMVARA AND ANASRAVA-SAMVARA ARE TERMINATED ON TWO OCCASIONS.

[The verse says,] "Prātimokṣa-samvara is terminated on five occasions." Prātimokṣa-samvara is terminated on these [following] five occasions: (1) when one abjures the Buddhist precepts (śikṣāniksepana); (2) when one commits an extremely serious sin (patanīya)\(^{80}\); (3) when one dies (chutī); (4) when one becomes a hermaphrodite (ubhayavyāṇjanotpatti) and (5) when the Dharma disappears (saddharmāntradhāna).\(^{81}\)

[The verse says,] "Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara

\(^{80}\)In the Vinaya-piṭaka, four extremely serious sins (pārājika) are enumerated: (1) sexual misconduct; (2) theft; (3) killing someone or asking someone to kill someone and (4) professing to have undergone a religious experience which he has not yet achieved. See Vinaya-piṭaka, III, 28ff.

\(^{81}\)AHSG (Taisho, 28, 841C.11ff) gives the following five occasions: (1) when one abjures the Buddhist precepts; (2) when the three wholesome roots are extinguished; (3) when one dies; (4) when one becomes a hermaphrodite and (5) when the Dharma disappears.
are terminated on two occasions." Dhyāna-samvara is terminated on the following two occasions: (1) when one backsides [from a higher meditative stage to a lower one] and (2) when one achieves a higher [meditative state]. Anāsrava-samvara is also terminated on two occasions: (1) when one backsides [from a higher meditative state to a lower one] and (2) when one becomes [a noble individual (ārya) as] a result [of meditative practice].
Commentary (892A.28-B.28)

Question: On what occasions are these potentials terminated?

Answer:

(23a-d) **PRATIMOKSHA-SAMVARA IS TERMINATED ON THESE FOLLOWING FOUR OCCASIONS: ABJURATION; DEATH; EXTINCTION OF WHOLESOME ROOTS AND [UPON BECOMING A] HERMAPHRODITE.**

[The verse says,] "Pratimoksha-samvara is terminated on these following four occasions." It should be known that Pratimoksha-samvara is terminated on four occasions.

Question: On what occasions?

Answer: [The verse says,] "Abjuration; death; extinction of wholesome roots and [upon becoming a] hermaphrodite." That is, **[Pratimoksha-samvara is terminated]** (1) when one abjures the Buddhist precepts; (2) when the body of a sentient being is extinguished (i.e., when one dies); (3) when [the three] wholesome roots (non-greed, non-aversion and non-ignorance) are extinguished and (4) when one becomes a hermaphrodite.82

--------------

82 The orthodox Kashmir-Vaibhāṣika gives these four occasions. See MVS (Taisho, 27, 623A); Nyāyānusāra (Taisho, 29, 564A) and Abhidharmadīpa, p.132. **AK** (p. 222) gives these following five occasions: (1) when one abjures the Buddhist precepts; (2) when one commits an extremely serious sin; (3) when the three wholesome roots are extinguished; (4) when the body of a sentient being is extinguished and (5) when one becomes a hermaphrodite. **AK**, p.222.
The Vinaya-dhara (Dharmaguptaka)\(^{83}\) explains that when the Dharma is extinguished, the Buddhist precepts, and Saṃgha's 'magic boundary' (sīmābandha)\(^{84}\) and ritual ceremonies would also be extinguished.

The Abhidharmika (Kashmir-Vaibhāṣika) explains that even if the Dharma is extinguished, the potential which one acquired in the past continues and is not extinguished. Therefore, it is explained that only the potential which one has not yet acquired is extinguished and one will be unable to acquire it [in the future].\(^{85}\)

One (Sautrāntika) may argue that if anyone commits [any one of the four] extremely serious sins once, the potential is [completely] terminated.\(^{86}\) But this is not true. [We understand that] after having committed an extremely serious sin, he/she should return to secular life. [And at that time,] he/she would abjure the Buddhist precepts, [but, later] he/she would be able to be ordained

\(^{83}\)Chu-she-lun-chi (Taisho, 41, 135C).

\(^{84}\)Sīmābandha' literally means 'drawing a magic boundary as protection against evil'. In the saṃgha, a designated region was prepared for monks. See, Vinaya-pitaka, I, 106.

\(^{85}\)This understanding of Kashmir-Vaibhāṣika is introduced in the AK (p.223) and the Nyāyānusāra, (Taisho, 29, 564B.18-19).

\(^{86}\)AK, p. 223.
again.\footnote{A controversy between the Sautrāntika and Vaibhāṣika (Kashmir) on this issue is found in the \textit{Nyāyānusāra}, (Taisho, 29, 564C.14-566B.28). On this issue, Dharmatrāta agrees with the Kashmir-Viabhaṣika.}

Now, [Sautrāntika may also say that] the Buddha explains, ["Once a monk commits an extremely serious sin, he can no longer be a monk."]\footnote{Shih-sung lu (Taisho, 23, 1157A).} [We understand that] monk [here] indicates an 'absolute' (paramārtha) monk, [not a 'secular' (samvrti) monk]. Therefore, in our understanding, there is no contradiction. [In this way,] even if a monk commits an extremely serious sin, though the monk [can neither achieve Arhatship] nor can acquire Anāsrava-samvara [as an absolute monk], he will still be able to acquire Prātimokṣa-samvara [as a secular monk].\footnote{In the \textit{Nyāyānusāra}, the same kind of interpretation is found (Taisho, 29, 557C).}

In addition to these four occasions, the potential is terminated [on another occasion: if a lay-person follows the special eight precepts, a wholesome potential remains for only a day.] This potential is terminated by the next day.

[Additional comment: We propose that] if one breaks a Buddhist precept, while in general one is faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, he/she is not abjuring [the Buddhist precepts entirely] but is breaking [a single
Buddhist precept]. It should be known [again] that even if he/she breaks [a single Buddhist precept], but is still following the other Buddhist precepts; he/she will regret that, and will decide not to do it again. Eventually he/she will be able to return to following the Buddhist precepts faithfully. Just as a wealthy person who falls into debt is called a debtor; after having gotten out of debt, he/she is referred to again as a wealthy person.  

(24a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT DHYĀNA-SAMVARA IS TERMINATED ON THE [FOLLOWING] TWO OCCASIONS: WHEN ONE ABANDONS [THE MEDITATIVE STATE]; WHEN ONE [ADVANCES FROM A LOWER MEDITATIVE STATE TO] A HIGHER ONE OR [BACKSLIDES FROM A HIGHER MEDITATIVE STATE TO] A LOWER ONE.

Dhyāna-samvara is terminated on two occasions.

Question: On what occasions?

Answer: [The verse says,] "Dhyāna-samvara is terminated on the [following] two occasions: when one abandons [the meditative state]; when one [advances from a lower meditative state to] a higher one or [backslides from a higher meditative state to] a lower one." When he/she abandons the meditative state (dhyāna), the potential is terminated because [the potential is acquired through] the meditative practice. When he/she [advances from a lower

---

90 See MVS (Taisho, 27, 623A.12ff). Dhammatrāta agrees with this Kashmir-Vaibhāṣika's understanding.
meditative state to] a higher one or [backslides from a higher meditative state to] a lower one, the potential [which he/she has acquired at that state] is terminated.

(25a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT ANÄSRAVA-SAMVARA IS TERMINATED ON THE [FOLLOWING] THREE OCCASIONS: WHEN ONE ABANDONS [THE MEDITATIVE STATE]; WHEN ONE HAS ACHIEVED THE SACRED FRUIT AND WHEN ONE ADVANCES [FROM A LOWER STATE OF PRACTICE TO A HIGHER ONE].

Anäsrava-samvara is terminated on three occasions.

Question: On what occasions?

Answer: (The verse says,) "When one abandons [the meditative state]; when one has achieved the sacred fruit and when one advances [from a lower state of practice to a higher one]." When he/she abandons [the meditative state], he/she loses the virtuous capacity [to bring about a wholesome effect]. "When one has achieved the sacred fruit" means that [in cultivation practice, one who is in the state of preparation achieves its fruit. For example, one who is preparing to become a 'stream-winner'] achieves the fruit of stream-winner and [one who is preparing to become a Arhat] achieves the fruit of Arhat. "When one advances" means that [among noble ones (ārya), one advances from one state to another. For example, one advances] from the state of 'having true faith and understanding' (śraddhādhimukta) to the state of 'having the view of truth' (drṣṭi-prāpta); one advances from the state of 'having a temporary emancipation'
(samaya-vimukta) to the state of 'having a fixed emancipation' (akopyaceto-vimukta).\textsuperscript{91}

\textsuperscript{91} These meditative states are explained in the AK in a detailed way. See AK, p.372.16ff.
B. The Others

AH (814A.13-19)

Question: On what occasions are the other [potentials] terminated?

Answer:

(19a-d) UNWHOLESOME POTENTIAL [IS TERMINATED ON] TWO [OCCASIONS]. WHOLESOME [DHARMA WHICH IS NOT INCLUDED IN] MATERIAL FORM IS ALSO THE SAME. MIND-ACTION WHICH IS CONTAMINATED-[INDETERMINE] IS TERMINATED ON ONE [OCCASION].

"Unwholesome potential [is terminated on] two occasions" means that [unwholesome potential is terminated] at the moment when one is ordained and when one dies. Wholesome action which is not included in material forms (rūpa) (i.e., a wholesome action in the realm of formlessness) is also terminated on two occasions: when the [three] wholesome roots are extinguished and when one advances to a much higher state. "Mind-action which is contaminated-[indeterminate] is terminated on one [occasion]" means that mind-action which is contaminated-[indeterminate] is terminated when he/she becomes free of all desires.

---------------------

92 AHS (Taisho, 28, 841C.21ff) gives these following four occasions: (1) at the moment when one is ordained; (2) when one acquires Dhyāna-samvara; (3) when one becomes a hermaphrodite and (4) when the body of a sentient being is extinguished.
Commentary (892B.28–893A.3)

Question: On what occasions is unwholesome potential terminated?

Answer:

(26a-d) UNWHOLESALE POTENTIAL IS TERMINATED ON FOUR OCCASIONS: [AT THE MOMENT WHEN] ONE IS ORDAINED; WHEN ONE DIES; WHEN ONE ACHIEVES MEDITATIVE STATE AND WHEN ONE BECOMES A HERMAPHRDITE.

Unwholesome potential (asamvara) is terminated on these following four occasions: (1) at the moment when one is ordained; (2) when the body of a sentient being is extinguished, (i.e., when the sentient being dies); (3) when one acquires Dhyāna-samvara and (4) when one becomes a hermaphrodite.

Question: When one who habitually performs unwholesome actions, [such as killing,] throws away his/her instruments for killing [others], does that indicate whether or not the potential is terminated?

Answer: That indicates that he/she [simply] has stopped performing an action. The potential is not acquired [without performing it. The essential issue here is] the termination of potential, [not of an action itself]. Therefore, [in this case], it does not indicate whether or not the potential is terminated. Just as if one were to attempt to cure a disease without taking medicine; the disease would still persist.
Question: We have already explained the termination of wholesome and unwholesome potentials. What about the termination of wholesome and unwholesome potentials for one who is in the intermediate state?

Answer:

(27a-d) IT IS EXPLAINED THAT WHOLESOME AND UNWHOLESOME POTENTIALS [FOR ONE WHO IS IN THE INTERMEDIATE STATE] ARE TERMINATED, WHEN [ONE'S ACTION] EXCEEDS ONE'S OWN MORAL STANDARD; WHEN ONE [FIRST] INTENDS TO [PERFORM AN ACTION] BUT DOES NOT [PERFORM IT] AND WHEN ONE'S ACTIVITY IS EXTINGUISHED.

For one who is in the intermediate state (naiva-samvara-nāsamvara), wholesome and unwholesome potentials are terminated on the [following] three occasions: (1) when one's action exceeds one's own moral standard; (2) when one [first] intends to [perform an action] but does not [actually perform it] and (3) when one's activity is extinguished.

"When one's action exceeds one's own moral standard" means thus: [one who is in the intermediate state] has established his/her own moral standard before he/she [actually] performs wholesome or unwholesome actions. If [his/her action] exceeds this standard, [that is, that action is extremely wholesome or unwholesome, his/her intermediate potential] is terminated [and it is transformed into either wholesome or unwholesome potential]. [This
occurs in the same way that] a ceramic artist controls the turning of potter's wheel in order to produce [a pot].

"When one [first] intends to [perform an action] but does not [actually perform it]" means thus: one [first] intends [to perform an action] and states that intent, though, in the next moment he/she does not [actually] perform it.

"When one's activity is extinguished" means that one no longer performs the said body-action and speech-action.

Now, if one who is in the intermediate state performs [these following] wholesome or unwholesome actions, [either wholesome or unwholesome] potential remains until he/she dies. If he/she makes the following oath, "I will never eat anything before giving alms to the Buddha. I will offer a flower and incense to him, give high praise to him and respect him. Moreover, I will give alms to others everyday", [a wholesome] potential remains until he/she dies. If he/she makes the following oath, "I will never eat any food before giving alms to others", [a wholesome] potential remains until he/she dies. If he/she periodically gives alms to others, for example, everyday, once a month and once an year, [a wholesome potential remains until he/she dies]. If he/she makes the following oath, "I will offer something to others for their benefit until I die", [a wholesome] potential remains until he/she dies. If he/she establishes
a relic-mound (stūpa), builds a monk's residence, cottage, and bathroom and makes a garden, or builds a ship and a bridge, [a wholesome] potential remains because of the following three causes: (1) his/her intent [on establishing a relic-mound and so on]; (2) his/her body [by which his/her intent can be realized] and (3) the object [of his/her intention, i.e., a relic-mound and so on].

As for unwholesome potential, if he/she makes the following oath, "I will have a grudge against someone everyday and I will always cause him/her trouble at his/her place of residence; such as engaging in fighting [with him/her] and speaking ill of [him/her]", an unwholesome potential remains until he/she dies.

We have already explained the termination of actions [included in the category of] material form (rūpa). [Dharmas] which are not included in the category of material form will be explained now.

(28a-d) WHOLESOme [DHARMA] WHICH IS NOT INCLUDED IN MATERIAL FORM IS TERMINATED [WHEN THE DHARMA] IS EXTINGUISHED; [WHEN ONE] BACKSLIDES [FROM THE REALM OF FORMLESSNESS TO OTHER LOWER REALMS] AND WHEN ONE ALTERS THE STATE OF EXISTENCE. DHARMA WHICH IS CONTAMINATED-[INDETERMINATE] IS TERMINATED ONLY WHEN ONE IS FREE FROM DESIRE. THIS [DHARMA] SHOULD BE UNDERSTOOD AS MIND-ACTION.

[The verse says,] "Wholesome [dharma] which is not included in material form is terminated when [the dharma] is
extinguished; [when one] backslides [from the realm of formlessness to other lower realms] and when one alters the state of existence." Dharma which is not included in material form, contaminated (sāsrava) and wholesome is terminated on the (following) three occasions: (1) when the roots of a wholesome [dharma, i.e., the three wholesome roots] are extinguished; (2) when one backslides [from the realm of formlessness to other lower realms] and (3) when one alters the state of existence, [the dharma which one possessed in the previous state is terminated].

(The verse says,) "Dharma which is contaminated-[indeterminate] is terminated only when one is free from desire." Dharma which is not included in the category of material form and is contaminated-indeterminate is terminated when one frees oneself from desire. When a practice is established inorder to eliminate a certain type [of passion], the [passion] will be terminated.
V. Ten Courses of Action (Karmapatha)

1. The Three Root-causes of Unwholesome Action

AH (814A.19-26)

I have already explained the nature of various actions and how these actions are acquired. The World-Honoured one furthermore classified these actions in detail. That will now be explained.

(20a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT AN ACTION WHICH BRINGS ABOUT A PAINFUL EFFECT MUST BE AN UNWHOLESOme ACT OF CONDUCT. SUCH MENTAL STATES AS GREED, ANGER AND WRONG-VIEW ARE MORE SINFUL THAN OTHER UNWHOLESOme FORMS OF MENTAL CONDUCT.

(The verse says,) "It should be known that an action which brings about a painful effect (duḥkha-phala) must be an unwholesome act of conduct (duścarita)." It is explained that an act of bad conduct indicates an unwholesome action; an unwholesome [action necessarily] brings about a painful effect.

(The verse says,) "[Such mental states as] greed (abhidhyā), anger (vyāpadā) and wrong-view (mithyāḍṛsti) are more sinful than other unwholesome forms of mental conduct." An unwholesome volition (cetanā) is unwholesome mental conduct. The following three types of [mental states] are explained as unwholesome mental conduct: greed, anger and wrong-view.
Commentary (893A.3-10)

I have already explained the nature of various actions and [how these actions] are acquired. The World-Honoured one [furthermore] classified these actions in detail. That will now be explained.

(29a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT AN ACTION WHICH BRINGS ABOUT A PAINFUL EFFECT MUST BE AN UNWHOLESOME ACT OF CONDUCT.
THERE IS ALSO SUCH UNWHOLESOME MENTAL CONDUCT AS GREED, ANGER AND WRONG-VIEW.

[The verse says,] "It should be known that an action which brings about a painful effect (duhkha-phala) must be an unwholesome act of conduct." If [either] a body-action, a speech-action or an volition (cetanā) brings about a painful effect as its retribution, it should be known that this [action] is an unwholesome act of conduct.

Question: Are these the only unwholesome acts of conduct?

Answer: There is also [unwholesome] mental conduct: greed, anger and wrong-view. It has been previously explained that an unwholesome volition is nothing other than unwholesome mental conduct. Moreover, greed, anger and wrong-view [are more sinful than other unwholesome mental conduct].
2. Ten Courses of Action (Karmapatha)

AH (814A.26-B.12)


[The verse says,] "The most victorious one (the Buddha) has expounded that actions which are different from the [above-mentioned] are wholesome conduct." Actions which are different from the [above-mentioned] are wholesome actions as well as [such mental states as] non-greed (anabhidhyā), non-anger (advesa) and right-view (samyag-dṛṣṭi).

[The verse says,] "Among the [unwholesome actions, ten of] the most [unwholesome ones are enumerated and] are called the ten courses (patha) [of unwholesome actions]." Among the unwholesome actions, if an action is extremely [unwholesome], it is explained as 'the course of action' (karmapatha). [The following ten actions are courses of actions]: (1) killing (prānātipāta); (2) theft (adattādāna); (3) sexual misconduct (mithyācāra); (4) telling lies (mṛṣāvāda); (5) malicious words (paiśunya); (6) harsh words (parusa); (7) senseless talk (sambhinnapralāpa); (8) greed (abhidhyā); (9) anger (vyāpadā) and (10) wrong-
view (*mithyādrsti*).\(^{93}\)

Among them, (1) killing indicates awareness of a sentient being with intent to kill it, preparation to take its life and [the actual carrying out of] the action; (2) theft indicates that one is aware of the fact that something belongs to someone else which is not supposed to be given to him/her, but he/she dares to take it anyway; (3) sexual misconduct indicates that one commits illicit intercourse with someone else's wife or daughter. [Also it indicates that] from time to time, one has intercourse with his own wife in an unacceptable way; (4) telling lies indicates that one says something untruthful, knowing that it is false; (5) malicious words indicates that out of hatred for someone, one tries with words to drive that person and his intimate [ones] apart; (6) harsh words indicates that out of hatred for someone, one speaks inconsiderately toward that person; (7) senseless talk indicates that one speaks senselessly with unwholesome thoughts; (8) greed indicates the desire [that exists] in the realm of desire; (9) anger indicates malice and (10) wrong-view indicates that one denies [a

\(^{93}\)The courses of actions are usually divided into wholesome and unwholesome, and are ten in number. The AH explains only the ten courses of unwholesome actions. Explanations of the ten courses of actions are found in several places in the *Nikāya* (such as *SN*, II, 168; *AN*, V, 57; *DN*, III, 71 et al) and *Agama* (*Taisho*, 1, 439C; *Taisho*, 2, 780C et al).
principle of] cause and effect.

These are the [ten] courses of actions (karma-patha). The other [actions] are not the courses of action. [For example, when one is in a state of] preparation (prayoga) [for carrying out] an action, [it is not the course of an action].\textsuperscript{94} Drinking spirits [without being intent on performing unwholesome actions is unwholesome conduct, but it is not the course of action].\textsuperscript{95} An intention or desire [to perform] unwholesome actions is [always] in the state of carrying out [a mind-action] (maula-karma-patha). Therefore, [this unwholesome intention provides the circumstances for] the course of the ten [unwholesome actions].

\textsuperscript{94} The Sarvástivādins describe the process of an action in three stages: (1) a state of preparation for carrying out an action (prayoga); (2) a state of carrying it out (maula-karma-patha) and (3) a state of its result (prsthā). The second stage is particularly called the course of action (karma-patha). See AK, p. 239.

\textsuperscript{95} AHS (Taisho, 28, 842B.6-8).
Commentary (893A.11-24)

(30a-d) THE MOST VICTORIOUS ONE HAS EXPOUNDED THAT ACTIONS WHICH ARE DIFFERENT FROM THE [ABOVE-MENTIONED] ARE WHOLESOME CONDUCT. AMONG VARIOUS FORMS OF CONDUCT, [THE TEN MOST UNWHOLESOME AND WHOLESOME ONES ARE ENUMERATED AND] ARE CALLED THE TEN COURSES OF ACTIONS.

[The verse says,] "The most victorious one (the Buddha) has expounded that actions which are different from the [above-mentioned] are wholesome conduct." All actions which are different from unwholesome conduct are wholesome conduct. [That is,] wholesome body-actions are nothing other than wholesome body-conduct. Wholesome speech-actions are nothing other than wholesome speech-conduct. Wholesome mind-actions and [such mental states as] non-greed, non-anger and right-view are nothing other than wholesome mind-conduct.

Concealed-indeterminate and unconcealed-indeterminate actions are neither unwholesome conduct nor wholesome conduct, because neither of them bring about retribution [for a past action]. Such an unconcealed-indeterminate action as artistic skill is performed in its own way and explained as it is. Unconcealed and concealed-indeterminate actions which are different from this are not called artistic skill [and so on].

Question: Are all wholesome and unwholesome conduct included in the courses of action?

Answer: [The verse says,] "Among various forms of
conduct, [the ten most unwholesome and wholesome ones are enumerated and] are called the ten courses of actions."

Among various [forms of] wholesome and unwholesome conduct, the extreme [cases] are the courses of actions. It is explained that those extremely wholesome [forms of] conduct are the wholesome courses of action; those extremely unwholesome [forms of] conduct are the unwholesome courses of actions.

It might be said that [these ten courses of action] are not necessarily [the state of carrying out an action]. But that is not true, for the state of carrying out an action (maula-karma-patha) is the most extremely [unwholesome and wholesome]. [These acts are performed] with great hesitation and [if undertaken], are of ultimate concern. Therefore, the state of carrying out an action is explained as the most extremely [unwholesome and wholesome actions].
A. The Three Unwholesome Courses of Body-action

Commentary (893A.24-B.19)*

Question: What are the courses of action?

Answer: [The courses of actions] are killing, wrong-view and so on. Killing will be explained now.

(31a-d) KILLING [INDICATES THAT] ONE'S MIND IS INTENT ON KILLING [A SENTIENT BEING], HE/SHE RECOGNIZES THE SENTIENT BEING AND [ACTUALLY] KILLS IT. IT IS CALLED KILLING. THEFT, SEXUAL MISCONDUCT AND SO ON SHOULDS ALSO BE [EXPLAINED] IN THE SAME WAY.

[The verse says,] "Killing (prāṇātipāta) [indicates that] one's mind is intent on killing [a sentient being], he/she recognizes the sentient being and [actually] kills it". That is, [killing means that he/she] intends to kill other sentient beings, happens to recognize a certain sentient being or several [sentient beings] and [actually] kills it [or them]. [This action of killing produces both] manifested (vijñāpti) and unmanifested (avijñāpti) [actions]. Some are always realized as unmanifested actions. This is [also] the body-action of killing.96

There are some other [forms of killing]. [For example], Iśvara's speech-[action (i.e., incantation)] and Ṛṣi's mind-[action (i.e., will power)] are also able to kill someone

---

96 This is the case that person A asks person B to kill a sentient being.
whom they dislike. One might say that the essential nature of these actions should be speech or mind-actions. But that is not so. The essential nature of [these] actions differs from [other speech and mind-actions] because the circumstance [that actually occurs (i.e., killing)] is not the ultimate [result of speech and mind-actions, but the ultimate result of body-action].

One (Nirgrantha)⁹⁷ might say that whether one had an intention [to kill a sentient being] or not, when one [actually] kills the sentient being, he/she commits a sin of killing. That is, just as [whether one intended to or not], if one touches a fire, [he/she will get burned], and if one eats poisoned food, [he/she will die]. But this analogy is false. For when one takes a sword in one's hand and sticks it into a fire, unlike one who touches the fire, whether intentionally or not, he/she will not get burned. And even if one is poisoned, whether intentionally or not, when one chants an incantation or takes a remedy to counteract that poison, he/she will not die. [However,] killing does not [follow] this analogy.

One might explain this in another [way]: "In [the case of] fire or poison, there are [special] circumstances

---

(nidāna) under which [one will] not get burned or [one will] not die. But, [in the case of] killing, there is no circumstance under which one will not die." This is not true. The sword, incantation or remedy are the [special] means by which [one will] not get burned or [one will] not die. [When one does] not [have] an unwholesome mind, his/her [mind] is the [special] condition in which he/she will not kill [any sentient beings]. Therefore, if one were to kill a sentient being without an unwholesome mind, [this action] would not be considered killing. That is, just as one takes a sword [in one's hand] and places it in a fire, he/she will not get burned.

Question: When one does not intend [to kill] a sentient being, but [motally] wounds it, will [the sentient being] ever not die?

Answer: [The sentient being] must die. However, the sin of killing was not committed, for although the act of killing was [carried out], he/she did not have an unwholesome intention [to do so]. One might say that this understanding is fallacious. However, it is correct. [It should be noted that one who preserves a wholesome mind is always] merciful. Therefore, even if he/she does not benefit others, he/she becomes content. [One who preserves an unwholesome mind always] cuts the roots of merit (kuśala-mūla). Therefore, even if he/she does not kill others,
he/she will become more discontent.

Theft (adattādāna) indicates that one is aware of the fact that something belongs to someone else which is not to be given to him/her, but he/she dares to take it anyway and to then consider it his/her own. [This action produces both] manifested and unmanifested [actions]. [But] some [actions] are always realized only through unmanifested action. This is [also] the body-action of theft.\(^9\)

Sexual misconduct (mithyācāra) indicates [as follows]: one is aware of the fact that [a girl is still] under the protection of her parents or a girl has no guardian, [but one has sexual intercourse with the girl]; [one has sexual intercourse with his wife] in an unacceptable way; [one has sexual intercourse with his wife] at the place where they are not supposed to do so (i.e., temple, grave and so on) and [one has sexual intercourse with his wife] at the time when they are not supposed to do so (i.e., when wife is in her menses or is pregnant and so on).\(^9\) These [acts] are not supposed to be undertaken, but if one does, [each action produces both] manifested and unmanifested actions. This body-action is [called] sexual misconduct.

\(^9\)It is the case that one asks someone else to steal.

\(^9\)See AK, p.244.
B. The Four Unwholesome Courses of Speech-actions

Commentary (893B.20-C.5)*

(32a-d) WHEN ONE RELATES SOMETHING UNTUTHFUL TO SOMEONE, HE/SHE SPEAKS MALICIOUS, HARSH OR SENSELESS TALK. THESE ARE THE COURSES OF [UNWHOLESEOME] SPEECH-ACTIONS.

[If] one did not [truly] see (drṣṭa), listen (śruta), [realize (mata) or understand (vijñāta)] a thing, [but claims that he/she did do]. If one dares to misrepresent the fact, [this action produces] manifested and unmanifested [actions]. This speech-action is telling lies (mrṣāvāda). [The action] is sometimes [performed as] an unmanifested [action].\(^{100}\)

[At the time of] Upavāsa, [one must confess his/her sins].\(^{101}\) [But] if one keeps silent or [confesses through] his/her bodily movement, these [actions] are also called 'telling lies'. It might be said that the nature [of these actions] is body or mind-action. But that is not so. For the nature [of these actions] differs from [that of other body or mind-actions]. This is a speech-action manifested through body. If a matter is unrelated to the body but manifested through it, it is a body-action. For example, at first, one

\(^{100}\)See AK, p.245.

\(^{101}\)Upavāsa is a regular meeting held by the Buddhist community. At that meeting, one must confess his/her previous sins.
may try to measure by sight the length of something and then [actually measure it] with one's body (i.e., extending one's arms the length of it). [Another] example is that manifested speech-[action, an oath] is regarded as body-action at the time of an ordainment ceremony. [Also,] even if one is silent or mindless at the time when he/she accepts the Buddhist precepts, [his action itself, i.e., accepting the Buddhist precepts] is regarded as body-action.

When one tries [with words] to drive [two people] apart and does not want them to become reconciled, [this action produces] manifested and unmanifested [actions]. This speech action is [called] 'malicious words' (pāśunya). [The action] is sometimes realized as an unmanifested [action].

Harsh words (parusa-vacana) indicates that one is intent on causing [someone] distress [with words]. If he/she [actually] distressed [that person] or, even if he/she did not [actually] do so, [this produces] manifested and unmanifested [actions]. This speech-action is harsh words. [The action] is sometimes realized as an unmanifested [action].

Senseless talk (sambhinna-pralāpa) indicates that one senselessly speaks untruthful words with unwholesome thoughts on an inappropriate occasion. In other words, every unwholesome speech-conduct is included in [senseless talk]. This is just as each passion (kleśa) is concomitant
with wrong-view (avidyā) or each letter (aksara) has its own sound (ghosa).
C. The Three Unwholesome Courses of Mind-actions

Commentary (893C.6-12)*

(32a-d) WHEN SENTIENT BEINGS [TRY TO] HARM EACH OTHER, THIS IS CALLED ANGER. GREED INDICATES THAT ONE REGARDS SOMETHING WHICH BELONGS TO SOMEONE ELSE AS HIS/HER OWN THING. WRONG-VIEW MEANS THE VIEW OF NOTHING.

[The verse says], "When sentient beings [try to] harm each other, this is called anger (vyāpāda)." If one tries to hit and kill a sentient being with an unwholesome mind, this [mental conduct, which is] the antithesis of being merciful, is called 'anger'.

[The verse says], "Greed (abhidhyā) indicates that one regards something which belongs to someone else as his/her own thing." When one wants something which belongs to someone else and tries to take it for his/herself, [this mental conduct] is called 'greed'.

[The verse says], "Wrong-view (mithyādṛsti) means the view of nothing." When one has given alms and so on, but he/she thinks that nothing [was given], this [mental conduct] is called 'wrong-view'.

3. The Cause of Unwholesome Courses of Actions

A. Anger

Commentary (893C.12-18)*

Question: What is the ultimate cause for the [unwholesome] courses of actions?

Answer:

(34a-d) [SUCH UNWHOLESOME] COURSES OF ACTIONS [AS] KILLING, HARSH WORDS AND ANGER ARE ALL CAUSED BY [THE SPECIFIC MENTAL STATE OF] ANGER. THESE ARE PERFORMED BY SENTIENT BEINGS.

[The verse says], "[Such unwholesome] courses of actions [as] killing, harsh words and anger are all caused by [the specific mental state of] anger". It should be known that [such unwholesome courses of actions as] killing, harsh words and anger are caused by [the specific mental state of] anger. When [each of these actions] is accomplished, it is always concomitant with [the mental state of] anger.

Question: Under what circumstances are these performed?

Answer: [The verse says,] "These are performed by sentient beings." It should be known that these [three] courses of actions are performed by sentient beings.
B. Greed

Commentary (893C.19-24)*

(35a-d) Two [types of] body-actions and greed are all caused by [the mental state of] greed. These take place concerning various materials.

[The verse says,] "Two [types of] body-actions and greed are all caused by [the mental state of] greed". It should be known that the following three [unwholesome] causes of actions, i.e., theft, sexual misconduct and greed result from [the specific mental state of] greed.

Question: Under what circumstances are these performed?

Answer: [The verse says,] "These take place concerning various materials." It should be known that these three [unwholesome] courses of actions take place concerning various materials (bhogådhisthåna).\(^{102}\)

\(^{102}\)AK, p. 242.19.
C. The Three Unwholesome Roots

Commentary (893C.25-894A.1)*

(36a-d) OTHER SPEECH-ACTIONS ARE CAUSED BY ALL THE THREE [UNWHOLESOME ROOTS]. THE WISE ONE explains THAT THESE [SPEECH-ACTIONS] TAKE PLACE CONCERNING MENTAL FACTORS.

[The verse says,] "Other speech-actions are caused by all the three [unwholesome roots]. It should be known that [such speech-actions as] telling lies, harsh words and senseless talk are the result of [the three unwholesome roots, i.e.,] greed (lobha), anger (dvesa) and delusion (moha).

Question: Under what circumstances are these performed?

Answer: [The verse says,] "The Wise One (the Buddha) explains that these [speech-actions] take place concerning mental factors (nāmādhiṣṭhāna)." It should be known that these three speech-actions are caused by [and concern] something mental.

---------------------

103 Mental factors here indicates feeling (vedanā), idea (samjñā), disposition (samskāra) and cognition (vijñāna). See AK, p. 242.20.
D. Wrong-view

Commentary (894A.2-6)*

(37a-d) WRONG-VIEW TAKES PLACE CONCERNING [BOTH] MENTAL AND MATERIAL FACTORS. IT IS ALSO CAUSED BY [THE SPECIFIC MENTAL STATE OF] DELUSION. ALL [TEN UNWHOLESOME] COURSES OF ACTIONS ARE GENERATED BY THE THREE TYPES [OF MENTAL STATES].

[The verse says,] "Wrong-view takes place concerning [both] mental and material factors (nāma-rūpa-adhisthāna). It is also caused by [the specific mental state of] delusion." Wrong-view takes place concerning [both] mental and material factors.

Question: From what [type of mental state] does it result?

Answer: [The verse says,] "It is also caused by [the specific mental state of] delusion." The [unwholesome mental conduct of] wrong-view results from the [specific human passion of] delusion (moha)."
4. Unwholesome Actions and The Three Unwholesome Roots

Commentary (894A.6-27)*

Question: Each of [the ten unwholesome] courses of action is preceded by the state of preparation [for carrying out the action] (prayoga). Does [this state] have the same kind of result as the state of carrying out an action (maula-karmapatha)?

Answer: [The verse says,] "All [ten unwholesome] courses of action are generated by the three types [of mental states]." All ten unwholesome courses of action are generated by [such specific mental states as] greed, anger and delusion. [These mental states] are manifested as the state of preparation for [carrying out an action] (prayoga).

[For example,] killing [generated by] greed indicates that for oneself or one's kindred, one [intends to] kill [a sentient being in order to get] its skin, meat, bones and so on.

Killing [generated by] anger indicates that one [intends to] kill the family or friends of one against whom he/she holds a grudge in order to cause his/her grief.

Killing [generated by] delusion indicates [the following]: one says that killing harmful insects is not a sin because it has a [justifiable] reason, i.e., [these insects] harm people. [Likewise, one says that] killing
various beasts is not a sin because it has a [justifiable] reason, i.e., [these beasts] eat people. People may say that killing aged or seriously ill parents is not a sin because it, for example, has an [acceptable] reason in Persia.\textsuperscript{106}

Theft [generated by] greed indicates that for one's own or another's sake, [he/she intends to] steal something which is being used [by someone else].

Theft [generated by] anger indicates that [when one holds] a grudge [against someone], he/she [intends to] steal something which belongs to that person or his/her intimate ones in order to cause them grief.

Theft [generated by] delusion indicates [the following]: a Brāhmaṇa claims that everything produced on the earth must be given to Brāhmaṇa. [However,] a Kṣatriya and others [in fact] possess [these products] because a Brāhmaṇa is weak in power. Therefore, a Brāhmaṇa says that taking what is rightfully his is not a sin. But, [for a Kṣatriya and others, their action] is considered theft because when they take [these products], they are aware of the fact that [these products] belong to someone else.\textsuperscript{107}

Sexual misconduct [generated by] greed indicates that the mental state of greed is the state of preparation for

\textsuperscript{106} It was a custom accepted in Persia. See MVS (Taisho, 27, 605C); AK, p.240.

\textsuperscript{107} MVS (Taisho, 27, 606A).
[carrying out a sexual misconduct]. [That is,] for one's own sake, a sentient being [intends to carry out an unchaste act] with his own [wife] or another's [wife].

[If a sexual misconduct] is not generated by greed, then it may be caused by anger. In that case, [because one holds] a grudge [against] a [certain] family, [he intends to carry out an unchaste act] with [the women] of that family or [women of] intimate [friends of] that family.

Sexual misconduct [generated by] delusion indicates [the following]: one claims that just like a bridge, a ship, a field or farm, flowers, fruits and pathways, women are to be shared with all sentient beings. [One also claims that] a Brāhmaṇa [is allowed to] take four wives; a Kṣatriya [is allowed to] take three wives; a Vaiśya [is allowed to] take two wives and a Śūdra [is allowed to] take only one wife. 108

As for speech-action, if greed occurs [in one's mind, his/her speech-action] should be known as [speech-action] generated by greed. [Likewise,] if anger occurs [in one's mind, his/her speech-action] should be known as [speech-action] generated by anger. If delusion occurs [in one's mind, his/her speech-action] should be known as [speech-action] generated by delusion.

[If greed occurs in one's mind followed immediately by

108 MVS (Taisho, 27, 606A).
a mind-action], this [mind-action] is generated by greed. Anger and wrong-view are likewise. [That is,] if anger occurs [in one's mind, one's mind-action] is generated by anger. If delusion occurs [in one's mind, one's mind-action, i.e., wrong-view] is generated by delusion.\textsuperscript{109}

\textsuperscript{109}\textit{MVS} (Taisho, 27, 606C).
5. Manifested and Unmanifested Action

Commentary (894A.27-B.12)*

Question: Does each course of action produce (both) manifested and unmanifested actions?

Answer:

(38a-d) IT IS EXPLAINED THAT THE STATE OF CARRYING OUT AN ACTION [PRODUCES BOTH] MANIFESTED AND UNMANIFESTED [ACTIONS].
THE STATE OF PREPARATION AND THE STATE OF RESULT DIFFER FROM IT. [THEY ARE] GENERATED BY GREED OR NON-GREED.

[The verse says,] "It is explained that the state of carrying out an action (maula-karmapatha) produces [both] manifested and unmanifested [actions]. The essential nature (svabhāva) of the seven [unwholesome] courses of action is material form (rūpa). [Therefore, these produce] manifested [action] as well as unmanifested [action].

Sexual misconduct necessarily [produces both] manifested [and unmanifested actions] because it is [always] the result of one's own [action]. [This action] is never [performed by] someone else. Other [unwholesome] courses of

110 The seven unwholesome courses of actions are: (1) killing; (2) theft; (3) sexual misconduct; (4) telling lies; (5) malicious words; (6) harsh words and (7) senseless talk. These body and speech-actions possess the nature of material form. Only an action which possesses the nature of material form produces manifested and unmanifested actions.
actions do not necessarily [produce both manifested and unmanifested actions]. If [an action] is performed by oneself, [it produces both] manifested [and unmanifested actions]. If one asks someone else to do an action, [this action produces] only unmanifested [action].

Question: Is there any [sort of] killing which is not performed as manifested body[-action]?

Answer: Yes, there is. It is [as the previously mentioned] manifested speech[-action].

[Question]: Is there any telling lies which is not performed as manifested speech[-action]?

Answer: Yes, there is. It is that manifested body[-action].

[Question]: Is there any [action] which is performed neither as manifested body[-action] nor speech[-action], but still commits these two sins, [i.e., killing and telling lies]?

Answer: Yes, there is. That is, [in the following two cases]: a Ṛṣi who maintains an unwholesome mind, [i.e., killing by incantation]; [a monk who remains silent] on

\footnote{For example, Iśvara's incantation. See translation part, p.234.}

\footnote{For example, keeping silent at the time of Upavāsa. See translation part, p.238.}

\footnote{See translation part, p.234.}
the occasion of Upavāsa, [i.e., telling lies in silence].\textsuperscript{114}

The wholesome courses of actions which possess the nature of material form\textsuperscript{115} in the realm of desire necessarily [produce] both manifested and unmanifested [actions].

Dhyāna-samvara and Anāsrava-samvara [produce] only unmanifested [action]. [These] do not [produce] manifested [action] because these are [always] concomitant with one's mind.\textsuperscript{116}

The state of preparation [for carrying out an action produces both] manifested [and unmanifested actions]. If [an action is generated by] one's morally pure (tīvra-prasāda) mind or by one's passionate (paryavasthāna) mind, [this action necessarily produces] unmanifested action. If [an action is neither motivated by] one's mind which is [always] morally pure (tīvra-prasāda) nor by [one's mind which] constantly (tīkṣṇa) possesses passions (paryavasthāna) and [this action] is manifested, it only [produces] manifested

\textsuperscript{114}See translation part, p.238.

\textsuperscript{115}The seven wholesome courses of actions are: (1) non-killing; (2) non-theft; (3) non-sexual misconduct; (4) non-telling lies; (5) non-malicious words; (6) non-harsh words and (7) non-senseless talk. These body and speech-actions possess the nature of material form.

\textsuperscript{116}See translation part, p.198.
[action]. It does not [produce] unmanifested [action].

The verse says, "The state of result differs from it." The state of result (prsthā) after carrying out an action [produces] only unmanifested [action] because the manifested action has been [already] extinguished.

-----------

117 Such an indeterminate action cannot produce unmanifest action.
6. Action, Preparation and Result

Commentary (894B.12-C.3)*

Question: What are the states of carrying out an action (maula-karmapatha), its preparation (prayoga) and its result (prstha)?

Answer: The state of preparation for carrying out killing occurs when, [for example], a sheep-farmer either captures or buys [a sheep], brings it home and hits it once or twice [in order to kill it]. The state of preparation (prayoga) [lasts from the time he gets the sheep] until the life [of the sheep] is extinguished. At the moment when [the sheep-farmer] terminates the life [of the sheep], manifested and unmanifested [actions are produced]. The [action at that moment] is called the state of carrying out [killing] (maula-karmapatha). [By carrying out the action of killing], an unwholesome body[-action] has been is performed and [it produces] unmanifested [action]. This [state] is the result of killing. Senseless talk and [other unwholesome courses of actions] are explained in the same manner. This [state] is called the result [of carrying out an action] (prstha).\textsuperscript{118}

Greed, anger and wrong-view do not have states of preparation, because when they occur [in one's mind] at the present moment, the state of carrying out [the mental

\textsuperscript{118}See MVS (Taisho, 27, 583B); AK, p. 239.12ff.
conduct] simultaneously occurs.

One claims that [for an unwholesome] course of body or speech-action, [each one of] the ten [unwholesome courses of] action [may be performed as] its preparation and result. How?

[For example,] one intends to kill a sentient being; but he/she [actually] kills another sentient being. [This killing] causes [the death of the wrong person] but [someone else] later kills the sentient being [which he/she had intended to kill]. That is, (1) one kills [a sentient being (perhaps, an animal)] as a sacrifice [to a god] in order to receive [magical] powers [to kill a specific person]; (2) one steals something which belongs to someone else and it is used for killing [a specific person]; (3) one commits sexual misconduct with a specific person's wife and lets her kill her husband; one [engages in] (4) telling lies, (5) malicious words, (6) harsh words and (7) senseless talk with that person's friends in order to drive that person apart from his intimate ones; (8) one is greedy for that person's property and so [is jealous and] angry with him, and (10) one speculates [various] ways of killing [that person] as a result of his/her wrong-view.\textsuperscript{119}

[These are the states of preparation for carrying out

\textsuperscript{119}AK, p. 240.10ff.
the killing of that person]. After [killing that person], one might kill his children, commit sexual misconduct with his wife and [engage in] the other unwholesome courses of action. It should be known that [these actions] are the result of killing. All [three states, i.e., an action; its preparation and result] are to be understood in this way.

[The verse says,] "[They are] motivated by greed or non-greed." Unwholesome courses of actions are motivated by greed, anger and wrong-view, and [they are] the result [of these three mental states]. [On the other hand,] wholesome courses of actions are motivated by non-greed, non-anger and right-view.

The state of preparation for wholesome courses of action can terminate the state of preparation for unwholesome courses of actions. [Likewise,] the state of carrying out [a wholesome action] can terminate the state of carrying out [an unwholesome action]; the result [of a wholesome action] can terminate the result [of an unwholesome action].

Question: What about [the Buddhist ordination ceremony]?

Answer: When a Śrāmanera accepts the Buddhist precepts, [his actions at the ceremony, such as], entering the place where the ceremony is held; walking around monks and bowing to them; being offered a robe and a bowl by his master
(upādhyāya) and being asked [if he really wants to become a monk or not] once or twice (jñāpticaturtham)\textsuperscript{120}, are the states of preparation [for becoming a monk]. When he is asked [if he really wants to become a monk or not] for the third time, [his action is] the state of carrying out an action, [i.e., the state of becoming a monk]. [At that moment, both] manifested and unmanifested [actions are produced]. Then the four rules [for Buddhist monks]\textsuperscript{121} are explained [by his master]. In this way, [after becoming a monk, his] body and speech-actions are performed following [the Buddhist precepts producing both manifested and] unmanifested [actions]. These [actions] are considered to be the result [of becoming a monk].

---

\textsuperscript{120}See translation part, p.189.

\textsuperscript{121}The four rules are: (1) a monk must wear a yellow robe (kāśāya); (2) a monk must be mendicant; (3) a monk must stay under trees and (4) a monk must take special medicine for his health. See Vinayapitaka, I, 96.
7. Various States and The Unwholesome Courses of Action

Commentary (894C.4-26)*

Question: Which courses of action are [performed by a sentient being] in a [certain] state?

Answer:


[In hell,] there is no killing because nobody can kill others; there is no theft because nobody can possess his/her own property; there is no sexual misconduct because no one can have contact with women; telling lies indicates that one says [something untruthful to someone] because of his/her misunderstanding. There is no telling lies because there is no misunderstanding, and never with malicious words [does a person try to drive two person apart] because [each sentient
being] is always segregated [from others].

Harsh words [are spoken] because [sentient beings dwelling in hell] suffer [various] torments. Senseless talk [is spoken] because [what they] say is inappropriate for the occasion. [Such mental states as] greed and wrong-view occur [in one's mind], but [these mental states do] not [generate] conduct. [The mental state of] anger, [on the other hand, occurs in one's mind] and also [generates conduct].

[The verse say,] "The rest of the four [types of courses of action are performed by sentient beings dwelling] in the North-continent (uttarakuru-dvīpa)." [Sentient beings dwelling in the North-continent perform] the rest of the four [types of] unwholesome courses of action.

[In the North-continent], there is no killing because the life-span [of each sentient being] is determined; there is no theft because no one can

\[\text{MVS} \text{ (Taisho, 27, 584B).}\]
\[\text{ibid.,} \text{ (Taisho, 27, 584C).}\]

\[\text{According to Buddhist cosmology, this world consists fo the following four continents: (1) the South-continent (jambu-dvīpa); (2) the East-continent (pūrvavideha-dvīpa); (3) the West-continent (avaragodānīya-dvīpa) and (4) the North-continent. See \text{AK, p.161.11ff.}}\]

\[\text{the four types are: (1) senseless talk; (2) greed; (3) anger and (4) wrong-view.}\]

\[\text{The life-span of each sentient being in the North-continent is exactly one thousand years. See \text{AK, p.172.20ff.}}\]
possess his/her own property, and there is no sexual misconduct because no one can have contact with women.

[There is an exception to this]. When [a man and a woman mutually] desire to commit sexual misconduct, the man takes the woman under a tree, [and they try to conceal themselves] by bending the branches [of the tree around them] as well as covering [these branches with something else in order not to be seen by anyone]. After having committed the sexual misconduct, they return to the former state. [This sort of act is possible]. However, if they cannot conceal themselves under a tree, both [of them must realize that their action] is conspicuous and they will separate.\footnote{MVS (Taisho, 27, 584C).}

[In the North-continent,] there is no telling lies because no one deceives oneself; there are no malicious words because everyone is always peaceful [with each other]; there are no harsh words because evryone is considerate toward [each other]. [However,] there is senseless talk because (sentient beings sometimes) sing songs. [Three unwholesome] courses of mind-action occur [in one's mind], but they never [generate body nor speech]-actions.\footnote{Ibid.}

[The verse says,] "[Sentient beings dwelling in] the
other [three continents perform] all ten [courses of action]." In the other three continents, except for the North-continent, [sentient beings perform] the ten courses [of unwholesome] action. [Some actions produce] the potential to perform unwholesome actions (asāṃvāra), but [some] do not.

[The verse says,] "...as well as other bad destinies and [the gods in] the heavens..." [The state of] animal (trīyāṅc) and hungry ghost (preta) as well as [the gods] in the heavens (deva) in the realm of desire\(^{129}\) [perform] the ten courses of [unwholesome] action. However, [their actions] never [produce] the potential to perform unwholesome actions.\(^{130}\)

[The Gods] in [a certain] heaven never kill each other, but they kill [sentient beings] in other destinies (gati), [such as Aśra and so on]. [Therefore, unwholesome courses of action are performed even by the gods]. One may claim thus:

\(^{129}\)The realm of desire consists of five types of existences: (1) the six heavens; (2) the four continents; (3) the eight hells; (4) the state of hungry ghost and (5) the state of animal. A detailed description is found in the third chapter of the AK. See also Sukomal Chaudhuri, Analytical Study of the Abhidharmakośa, (Calcutta: Sanskrit College, 1976), pp.121-148.

\(^{130}\)The potential to perform unwholesome actions is acquired through unwholesome actions which one intends to carry out. In those three states, since one performs an unwholesome action unintentionally, he/she will never acquire the potential to perform unwholesome actions.
in the heavens, even if the arms and legs [of a god] are cut off by [another god], [these arms and legs] will regenerate. [Therefore, there is no killing in the heavens]. [However,] if the neck or waist [of a god] is cut [by another], the god must die. So, [even the gods in the heavens perform] all the ten courses of [unwholesome] action including [killing], theft and so on.

[The gods] in the realm of form as well as in the realm of formlessness never [perform] unwholesome courses of actions [because they do not have unwholesome minds].
8. Various States and The Wholesome Courses of Action

Commentary (894C.26-895A.12)*

Question: Which wholesome courses of action are [performed by a sentient being] in a [certain] state?

Answer:


[The verse says,] "In hell and the North-continent, three [types of] courses of action [are performed]." In hell, non-greed, non-anger and right-view [are performed]. In the North-continent likewise.

"In the realm of formlessness likewise" indicates that in the realm of formlessness, these three [wholesome mental states] occur [in one's mind] at present and are performed [as wholesome courses of action].

"Sacred ones in that realm [perform] the ten [wholesome courses of action]" indicates that sacred ones (arya-pudgala) in the realm of formlessness perform the ten courses of wholesome action. [These actions are performed
as] Anāsrava-[samvara].

There are some exceptions: [Dhyāna]-samvara in the realm of form; [the state of] animal and hungry ghost and some other exceptions.

(The verse says,) "There are some exceptions: [Dhyāna]-samvara in the realm of form..." In the realm of form, [sentient beings maintaining] Dhyāna-samvara perform the ten wholesome courses of action. [These actions produce both the future and past] possession [of the potential to perform wholesome actions]. [These actions] also [produce] the present [possession of the potential to perform wholesome actions]. If one is born in that [realm] as a sacred one, [he she is considered to perform the wholesome] courses of action [through] Anāsrava-[samvara].

"[The state of] animal and hungry ghost" indicates that [even sentient beings in the state of] animal and hungry ghost [perform] the ten wholesome courses of action. [However, their actions are generated by] neither the potential to perform wholesome actions (samvara) nor the

[131] Though sacred one in the realm of formlessness never perform body nor speech-actions, they acquire the past and future possessions of Anāsrava-samvara. Therefore, they are considered to perform those wholesome body and speech-actions through Anāsrava-samvara.
potential to perform unwholesome actions (asaṃvara).\textsuperscript{132}

[The verse says,] "...some other exceptions." Other indicates the South-continent (jambudvīpa), the East-continent (pūrvavideha-dvīpa), the West-continent (avaragodānīya-dvīpa) and the heavens in the realm of desire. In these [places], the ten wholesome courses of action [are performed]. Some [actions are generated by] the potential to perform wholesome actions; some are not. In the heavens in the realm of desire, [one's action is] always [generated by] either Dhyāna-asaṃvara or Anāsrava-asaṃvara.

\textsuperscript{132}As an action in these two states is performed unintentionally, neither samvara nor asaṃvara is acquired after performing an action.
9. Volition and The Courses of Action

A. Unwholesome Courses of Action

Commentary (895A.12-A.29)*

Question: Which unwholesome courses of action are concomitant with one's volition (cetanā)?

(42a-d) EACH ONE OF THE UNWHOLESOME COURSES OF ACTION IS CONCOMITANT WITH ONE'S VOLITION. IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT [THERE CAN BE AN] INCREASING [NUMBER OF ACTIONS, FOR EXAMPLE,] TWO, THREE OR EIGHT, [WHICH ARE PERFORMED SIMULTANEOUSLY].

The essential nature of the [following] three unwholesome courses of action is in one's body: killing, theft and sexual misconduct. Each one [of these body-actions] is always concomitant with one's volition.

"Two [unwholesome courses of body-action which] are concomitant with [one's volition]" indicates that one kills other sentient beings and at the same time steals something.

"Three [unwholesome courses of body-action which are] concomitant with [one's volition]" indicates that one has two messengers [who commit the killing and the theft] and he himself commits sexual misconduct. This conduct (i.e., sexual misconduct) cannot result from anyone's actions but his own. [In this way,] if [several actions] of this type (i.e., body-action) are performed together, all [the actions] will [bring about] results simultaneously.
Each one [of the unwholesome] courses of speech-action is always concomitant with [one's volition]. "Two [unwholesome courses of speech-action which are] concomitant with [one's volition]" indicates that telling lies as well as senseless talk are spoken at an inappropriate time; [malicious words] in order to drive two persons apart, as well as senseless talk are spoken at an inappropriate time, and harsh words as well as senseless talk are spoken at an inappropriate time.

"Three [unwholesome courses of speech-action which are] concomitant with [one's volition]" indicates that [malicious words] in order to drive two persons apart, telling lies and senseless talk are spoken at an inappropriate time; harsh words, telling lies and senseless talk are spoken at an inappropriate time, and harsh words, [malicious words] in order to drive two persons apart and senseless talk are spoken at an inappropriate time.

"Four [unwholesome courses of speech-action which are] concomitant with [one's volition]" indicates that [malicious words] in order to drive two persons apart, telling lies, harsh words and senseless talk [are spoken] at an inappropriate time.

Each one [of the unwholesome] courses of mind-action is always concomitant with one's volition. [The essential nature of] each [mental] conduct differs [from the others].
Therefore, two [unwholesome courses of mind-action] are not [concomitant with one's volition at the same time].

In this way, five, six, seven or eight [unwholesome courses of action] are concomitant with [one's volition]. ["Eight unwholesome courses of action which are concomitant with one's volition"] indicates that one commits sexual misconduct and has his six messengers [who commit six other courses of unwholesome action]. [Sexual misconduct] cannot be performed by anyone [but oneself]. When [seven actions] of specific types (i.e., body-action and speech-action) are performed together, all [the actions] will [bring about] results simultaneously. [The mental state of] "greed" also occurs [in his mind] at that time. In this way, these eight courses of unwholesome action are concomitant with one's volition.
B. Wholesome Courses of Action

Commentary (895A.29-B.12)*

Question: Which wholesome courses of action are concomitant with one's volition (cetanā)?

That is, two, three, four, six, seven, nine or ten wholesome courses of actions are concomitant with one's volition.

When the five wholesome senses [i.e., sight, sound, smell, taste and tangibility] occur in the realm of desire, [when a wholesome mind occurs based on] three sense organs [i.e., eye, ear and body] in the first meditative state [in the realm of form]133 and [when] 'the knowledge of destruction' (ksaya-jhāna) and 'the knowledge of non-arising' (anupāda-jhāna) [occur] in the realm of formlessness134, two courses of wholesome [mind]-action are concomitant with one's volition: non-greed and non-anger.

133 In these two states, sentient beings are not yet able to preserve Prātimokṣa-samvara and Dhyāna-samvara. Therefore, right-view based on these two potentials does not occur.

134 In the realm of formlessness, the samvara concomitant with one's mind does not exist. In these two states, right-view never occurs.
When wholesome mental cognition (mano-vijñāna) occurs\textsuperscript{135}, when an unstable mind (asamāhita-citta)\textsuperscript{136} occurs in the realm of form or formlessness and when right-view based on uncontaminated knowledge [occurs] in the realm of formlessness, three matters [i.e., non-greed, non-anger and right-view] are concomitant with one's volition.

As for laymen (upāsaka) and novices (śrāmanera) who are faithfully following the Buddhist precepts, when an unwholesome or an indeterminate mind occurs, four [courses of wholesome action] are concomitant with [one's volition].\textsuperscript{137} When the five senses are activated by one's wholesome mind, six [courses of wholesome action are concomitant with one's volition].\textsuperscript{138} When wholesome mental cognition occurs, seven [courses of wholesome action are concomitant with one's volition].\textsuperscript{139} Also, as for a monk (bhikṣu), when a wholesome or an indeterminate mind occurs

\textsuperscript{135}This indicates that a wholesome action which is not generated by Prātimokṣa-samvara occurs.

\textsuperscript{136}AK, P. 207.7.

\textsuperscript{137}Four indicates (1) non-killing; (2) non-theft; (3) non-sexual misconduct and (4) non-telling lies.

\textsuperscript{138}Six indicates (1) non-killing; (2) non-theft; (3) non-sexual misconduct; (4) non-telling lies; (5) non-greed and (6) non-anger.

\textsuperscript{139}Seven indicates (1) non-killing; (2) non-theft; (3) non-sexual misconduct; (4) non-telling lies; (5) non-greed; (6) non-anger and (7) right-view.
and he is in the state of being mindless, [seven courses of wholesome action are also concomitant with his volition].

As for a monk, when wholesome mental cognition [occurs in the realm of desire], a stable mind (samāhita-citta)\textsuperscript{140} occurs in the realm of form and right-view occurs based on uncontaminated [knowledge acquired] through meditation (dhyāna), the ten courses of wholesome action are concomitant with one's volition.

\textsuperscript{140}AK, p. 384.11.
10. Various Effects

Commentary (895B.12-C.14)*

Question: What type of effect does a course of action [produce]?


Each one [of the ten] courses of action [brings about] three [types of] effects: 'maturation effect' (vipāka-phala); 'down-flow effect' (niṣyanda-phala) and 'dominant effect' (adhipati-phala).\(^\text{141}\)

If one prepares [to carry out] a course of [unwholesome] action and [actually] carries it out, as a result, he/she will be born in [the state of] hell (nāraka), [hungry ghost or animal]. This [result] is called 'maturation effect'.\(^\text{142}\)

If one were to get out of [the state of] hell and enter the human [state (manusya) and there perform a certain unwholesome action, the action performed] would bring about a similar effect. For example, if one kills [another],

\(^\text{141}\)See AK, pp.90-97; see also Alfonso Verudu, Early Buddhist Philosophy, (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1985), pp.67-78.

\(^\text{142}\)MVS (Taisho, 27, 588C).
his/her life-time in turn will be short; if one steals
[something], he/she will [also] lose his/her own property;
if one commits sexual misconduct, his wife will not be
chaste; if one tells lies, [others] will speak ill of
[him/her]; if one [tries with] malicious words [to drive two
people apart], he/she will lose his/her own friends; if one
speaks harsh words, he/she will be badly spoken of
him/herself; if one talks senselessly, his/her speech will
be inappropriate; if greed [occurs in one's mind, as a
result], this greed will continue; if anger [occurs in one's
mind, as a result], this anger will continue and if wrong-
view [occurs in one's mind, as a result], this wrong-view
will continue. These [results] are called 'down-flow
effect'.

The dominant effect for each one of the courses of
action indicates thus: [if one performs unwholesome actions,
as a result], he/she will become ugly losing his/her
radiance; it will often frost or hail; [the atmosphere] will
become dusty, polluted, bad-smelling and impure; one's
residence will be [located in] a precipitous [area
surrounded by] thorns; the harvest will be damaged by cold
weather, producing very little and of poor [quality]; [the
fruits may become] overripe and [become] untasty or the

---

143 MVS (Taisho, 27, 588C.7ff).
blossoms may not appear at all. 144

Question: Why does such similar [type of] effect [occur]?

Answer:

(45a-d) IF ONE INFlicts SUFFERING ON OTHERS, HE/SHE WILL [IN RETURN] UNDERGO SUFFERING [DUE TO] THE COURSES OF UNWHOLESOME [ACTION]. IF ONE SEVERS THE LIFE [OF SOMEONE ELSE], HIS/HER LIFE, [AS A RESULT], WILL BE SHORT. HE/SHE WILL LOSE HIS/HER RADIANCE BECAUSE HE/SHE DETRACTED FROM THE RADIANCE OF SOMEONE ELSE.

[The verse says,] "If one inflicts suffering on others, he/she will [in turn] undergo suffering [due to] the courses of unwholesome [action]." If one kills a person and inflicts suffering on that person, he/she will [in return] experience suffering [due to] the unwholesome courses [of action]. The suffering inflicted on him/her will be similar to [that which he/she inflicted on others, i.e., killing].

Question: What type of aggregate (skandha) does one kill? Is it [only] the aggregate of [material] form (rūpa-skandha) or [all] the five types of aggregates?

Answer: One may claim that it [only] the aggregate of [material] form because a form is struck (rūpyate) [by something else]. The other four [types of] aggregates are not impacted upon (pratighāta) [by

144 MVŚ (Taisho, 27, 588C.7ff).
something else]. One, [on the other hand,] may argue that it is [all] five [types] of aggregates. Although the other four [types of] aggregates are not impacted upon [by something else], these [four types of aggregates] are activated based on the aggregate of [material] form. [Therefore], when one kills the aggregate of [material] form, he/she also kills the other [four types of aggregates]. This is just like [when] one breaks a bottle [filled with milk], he/she will lose [not only the bottle but also] the milk.

Question: [If one tries to kill a person,] will he/she kill [that which is] indeterminate or [that which is of] the three types, [i.e., wholesome, unwholesome and indeterminate]?

Answer: One may claim that [he/she would kill that which is] indeterminate, [saying, if one tries to kill a sentient being with a sword or stick, the body of the sentient being] will be wounded by the sword or stick. [The body i.e., a material form is] indeterminate. Therefore, the other two [types, i.e., wholesome and unwholesome] are irrelevant [here]. One, [on the other hand,] may argue that [he/she would kill that which is of the] three types. (The

reason is] as the above-mentioned. 146

Question: Which aggregate is killed? Is it [the aggregate of] past, present or future? If it were [the aggregate of] the past, the [aggregate] would already have been extinguished; if it were [the aggregate of] the future, the [aggregate] would not yet exist and if it were [the aggregate of] the present, the [aggregate] would have to occur at a certain moment.

Answer: One may claim that [it would be the aggregate of] future. Because, [though one] lives in the present time, he/she is [actually] striking (rūpyate) [the aggregate which] will come into existence in the future. One may argue that [it would be both] present and future. Because [if the aggregate of future] were being wounded by a sword or stick at the present, the aggregate [of future] will be extinguished and will not be succeeded [in the future].

[The verse says,] "If one severs the life [of someone else], his/her life, [as a result], will be short." One who kills someone terminates the life of that [person]. Therefore, he/she will [also in retribution] have a short life.

-----------------

146Although one's mind is activated based on one's body which is indeterminate, the mind is transformed: an indeterminate mind is transformed into an unwholesome mind; an unwholesome mind is transformed into a wholesome mind. Therefore, if one kills a sentient being, he/she will kill that which is of the three types.
[The verse also says,] "He/she will lose his/her radiance because he/she detracted from the radiance of someone else." One who kills a person detracts from the radiance of that person. Therefore, his/her own appearance will completely lose its radiance.

Each [of the ten] courses of action should be understood according to its effect. [Such acts as] theft and sexual misconduct do not cause him/herself pain, though, his/her [wholesome] intent will be destroyed. [If one intended to] drive two persons apart [with words, but] was unsuccessful, [the words would still be] considered malicious words. [If] one tried with words to trouble someone but he/she was not troubled [by the words], [the words would still be] considered harsh words.
VI. Various Divisions of Action

1. Action and The Time of Its Retribution

AH (814B.13-15)


That is, [some] actions bring about [their] effects in the present time, [but as for others, we] are uncertain as to when [their effects will occur].¹⁴⁷

¹⁴⁷AHS (Taisho, 28, 842B.15-22) explains this in a more detailed way: for some actions it is certain when their retribution will be brought about: (1) an action which brings about its effect in the present time (drṣṭa-dharma-vedanīya-karma); (2) an action which will bring about its effect in the next life (upapadya-vedanīya-karma) and (3) an action which will bring about its effect after the next life (apara-paryāya-vedanīya-karma). The other actions, about which we are uncertain as to when their effects will be realized, are called 'uncertain action' (aniyata-vedanīya-karma).
Commentary (895C.14-896A.8)

I have already explained the courses of action. The various divisions [of action] will now be explained.


There are three [types of] action: (1) '[an action] bringing about [its effect] in the present' (drsta-dharma-vedanīya-karma); (2) '[an action] bringing about [its effect] in the next [life]' (upapadya-vedanīya-karma) and (3) '[an action] bringing about [its effect] after [the next life]' (apara-paryāya-vedanīya-karma).

(1) An action bringing about its effect in the present indicates that an action is performed in this life and [its effect] is [also] realized in this life. [This type of action] is called '[an action] bringing about [its effect] in the present'; (2) if [the effect of an action] is realized in one's second life, [this type of action] is called '[an action] bringing about [its effect] in the next [life]' and (3) if [the effect of an action] is realized after one's second life, [this type of action] is called '[an action] bringing about [its effect] after [the next life]'.
One may claim that there are four [types of] action: the three [types mentioned] above and [an action considered] uncertain [as to when its effect will occur] (aniyata-vedanīya-karma). As for the three [types of action mentioned] above, [the time when these actions bring about their effects] does not alter, [but as for] this uncertain [type of action, the time when the action brings about its effect] alters. 'Alter' indicates that [a practice such as] following the Buddhist precepts [faithfully] prevents [an unwholesome effect from occurring].

The Dārṣṭāntika [school] 148 claims that for every action [even] the most evil actions, [i.e., the deadly sins] (ānantaryā-karma), 149 [the time when each action brings about its effect] varies. They [continue to] explain [thus]: for example, if one [were to commit] one of the most evil actions and [the time when that action's effect were realized] were not to vary, then one would never be able to reach the highest point of the universe (bhavāgra) 150 [nor even to attain a sacred state]. Therefore, it should be

148 A school sub-divided from the Sautrāntika. See AK, p. 230.9ff.


150 The highest stage in the realm of formlessness. It is the highest cosmic realm in which neither thinking nor non-thinking exists (naivasamjñānāsamjñāyatana). See AK, p.434.7ff.
known that when one reaches the highest point of the universe, [the time when] the evil action [brings about its effect] varies.

They [also] claim that [the effect of] an action bringing about its effect in the present is not necessarily realized in the present. If [the effect of an action] is realized [in the present, this action] will be nothing more than [the action] bringing about its effect in the present. They claim thus: [there are] eight [types of] action. [That is, among the actions which are supposed to] bring about [their effects] in the present, [some] necessarily [bring about their effects in the present, but some] do not necessarily; [bring about their effects]. [The other two types of action] and an action [considered] uncertain [as to when its effect] will occur are likewise.\textsuperscript{151}

In this way, they explain that [for an action,) even if the time when [its effect is brought about] is certain, [the effect] will not be necessarily realized. [This will be explained in detail] by employing the [following] four categories: as for an [action], (1) [if] the time when [its effect is brought about] is certain, but [its effect] is not be necessarily realized; (2) [if its effect] is necessarily maturated, but the time [of its realization] is not certain;

\textsuperscript{151}See AK, p. 230.9ff.
(3) the time when [its effect is brought about] is certain and [its effect] is necessarily realized, and (4) the time when [its effect is brought about] is neither certain nor [its effect] is necessarily realized.\textsuperscript{152}

Question: Among the four [types of] action, which will be the cause for [defining] a specific type [of sentient being]?

Answer: The three [types] excluding [an action] bringing about [its effect] in the present.\textsuperscript{153}

In the realm of desire the four types of action are the causes [for defining a specific type of sentient being]. The realm of form and formlessness are likewise.

In hells the four types [of action] are the causes [for defining a specific type of sentient being] with respect to unwholesome actions, but with respect to wholesome [actions], the three types [of action] excluding [an action] bringing about [its effect] in the present [are the causes for defining a specific type of sentient being].\textsuperscript{154} In the other destinies, the four types [of action are the causes for defining a specific type of sentient being].

\textsuperscript{152}See AK, p. 230.9ff.

\textsuperscript{153}For a sentient being, its specific type is already endowed in the present time. Therefore, an action in the present does not have an affect on the specific type.

\textsuperscript{154}In hells no comfortable effect is brought about by a wholesome action in the present time.
For an ordinary person (prthag-jana) dwelling in the realm of desire, if his/her desire in the realm of form were not yet extinguished, the four types [of action would be the causes for defining a specific type of sentient being].

If his/her desire [in the realm of desire] were extinguished but he/she still desired [to reach] 'the heaven of Brahmā' (mahābrahma-deva)\(^{155}\) [and so on in the realm of form] and [achieves] 'Arhatship of never backsliding' (aparihāṇa-dharma)\(^ {156}\), the three types [of action] excluding [an action] bringing about [its effect] in the next life [are the causes for defining a specific type of sentient

\(^{155}\) This heaven is the third one attained by the first meditative state in the realm of form: (1) 'the heaven of Brahmā's retainers' (brahmakāyikā); (2) 'the heaven of Brahmā's ministers' (brahmapurohitā) and (3) 'the heaven of Brahmā'. There are seventeen heavens in the realm of form. AK, p. 111.21ff. See also Chaudhuri, pp.126-128.

\(^{156}\) There are six types of Arhats: (1) 'Arhatship of still backsliding' (parihāṇadharma); (2) 'Arhatship susceptible to put an end to his existence' (cetanā-dharma); (3) 'Arhatship susceptible to maintain from backsliding (anuraksanā-dharma); (4) 'Arhatship of neither backsliding nor progress' (sthitākampya-dharma); (5) 'Arhatship progressing to the next right away' (prativedhanā-dharma) and (6)'Unshakable Arhatship' (akopya-dharma).

The 'Unshakable Arhatship' is further classified into two: (1) 'Arhatship of never backsliding' (aparihāṇa-dharma), that is, an arhat who by nature has a keen sense of achieving Nirvāṇa and (2) 'Unshakable Arhatship' achieved through practice (akopya-dharma). AK, pp.251-253. See also Chaudhuri, pp.183-184.
being] in the realm of desire.\textsuperscript{157}

In the heaven of Brahmā and so on, the three types [of action] excluding [an action] bringing about [its effect] in the present [are the causes for defining a specific type of sentient being].

If one achieves 'Arhatship of still backsliding' (parihāna-dharma) in the heaven of Brahmā and so on, [the three types] above-mentioned [are the causes for defining a specific type of sentient being].

As for wholesome actions in the realm of desire, the four types [of action are] the causes [for defining a specific type of sentient being]. In this way, for each ordinary person and sacred one, [his/her action] is explained according to the state [in which he/she] dwells.

\textsuperscript{157}This indicates that if one achieves 'Arhatship of never backsliding', he/she will not be born in the realm of desire again.
2. Three-fold Divisions of Action

AH (814B.15-C.1)

Question: As the World-honored One (the Buddha) has explained, there are three [types of] action: (1) [an action bringing about] a pleasant effect (sukha-vedaniya-karma); (2) [an action bringing about] a painful effect (duhkha-vedaniya-karma) and (3) [an action bringing about] neither a pleasant nor a painful effect (adukkhásukha-vedaniya-karma). What are [these three types of action]?

Answer:


[The verse says,] "Wholesome [actions] in the realm of desire and in the three [meditative] states of the realm of form bring about pleasant effects." Wholesome actions in the realm of desire bring about pleasant effects. Also [wholesome actions] in the first, second and third meditative states of the realm of form bring about pleasant effects. It is explained that all these bring about pleasant effects.

---

158 MVS (Taisho, 27, 596A); AK, p. 228.3ff.
Question: Is it also [the time when the effect is realized] certain?

Answer: [The verse says], "[The time when the effect] is realized can be [either] certain or uncertain." [For some actions, the time when their effects are realized] is certain; [for the other actions, the time when their effects are realized] is uncertain. All the wholesome actions in these four states, [i.e., the realm of desire and the first, second and third meditative states in the realm of form], bring about pleasant effects.

(24a-d)  WHolesome [actions] in higher [states] bring about [effects which are] neither pleasant nor painful. [When] a painful effect is realized, that [action] is explained as an unwholesome action.

[The verse says], "Wholesome [actions] in higher [states] bring about [effects which are] neither pleasant nor painful." Wholesome actions in the fourth meditative state [of the realm of form] and in the realm of formlessness bring about effects which are neither pleasant nor painful. These effects are accompanied by neither pleasure nor pain. During [these meditative states], neither pleasure [nor pain] is experienced.¹⁵⁹

¹⁵⁹AK, p.437.13ff. See also Paul Griffiths, Indian Buddhist Meditation-Theory..., pp.232-239.
[The verse also says], "When a painful effect is realized, that [action] is explained as an unwholesome action." Unwholesome actions bring about painful effects. These [effects] are always accompanied by painful feelings. As mentioned above, [the time when] the effect is realized can be either certain or uncertain.
Commentary (896A.8-B.10)

I have already explained [an action] bringing about [its effect] in the present and so on. Now, I will explain [an action] bringing about a pleasant [effect and so on].


[The verse says,] "Wholesome actions in the realm of desire and in the three [meditative] states in the realm of form are called [actions bringing about] pleasant feelings." Wholesome actions in the realm of desire bring about pleasant feelings (sukha-vedanīya) and material wealth (bhoga). [The first, second] and third meditative states in the realm of form bring about pleasant effects.

Question: What [type of] effect is realized in the intermediate meditation (dhyānāntara) ?

Answer: One argues that [in the intermediate state, the same type of] pleasant effect [brought about] in the first meditation [will be realized]. 160 But, this is false.

-------------------

160 This discussion indicates thus: the first meditative state, when not endowed with initial thought (vitarka), is considered the intermediate meditation. This means that both the first meditative state and the intermediate meditation are achieved in the same stage (bhūmi). In the first
[The following statement found] in an Abhidharma work explains: "Is there any action [whose effect] is perceived [only through one's] mind, but not [one's] body? Answer: Yes, there is. It is a wholesome action [performed] without initial thought (vitarka) [in the intermediate meditation]."\textsuperscript{161}

Another statement [is thus]: "Actions in the intermediate meditation [bring about effects. But, these] effects do not evoke any [pleasant] feelings; [they] bring about [effects] only [in material] form or [as that which] is dissociated from the mind (citta-viprayukta-samskāra)."\textsuperscript{162} [But, this is also false, for] wholesome actions in the four stages, [i.e., the realm of desire and the first, second and the third meditative states], bring about effects [which evoke] pleasant [feelings].

Question: Is the time when [the effect is realized] certain?

\textsuperscript{161}Jñānarāstrāṇa, (Taisho, 26, 973A). This statement indicates thus: wholesome actions in the intermediate meditation bring about pleasant effects. But, in the intermediate meditation, these pleasant effects are perceived only through one's mind, not like those pleasant effects in the first meditation. See also Kokuyaku, pp.166-167.

\textsuperscript{162}MVS (Taisho, 27, 597A).
Answer: (The verse says,) "The time when the effect is realized can be either certain or uncertain." Some are [considered] certain [as to when the effect is realized]; some are uncertain.


(The verse says,) "Wholesome actions in higher [states] bring about [effects which are] neither pleasant nor painful." Wholesome actions in the fourth meditative state and wholesome actions in the realm of formlessness are considered to bring about effects [which are] neither pleasant nor painful. These [wholesome actions] evoke feelings of neither pleasure nor pain (adukkhaṃsukha-vedanīya) nor [concern] material wealth.

Question: Why is the effect [which is] neither pleasant nor painful not realized in [the] lower states?

Answer: One may explain [thus]: "[The effect which is neither pleasant nor painful is not realized in those lower states], because [the feeling] in [those] lower states is gross (audārika), but the feeling of neither pleasant nor pain is is subtle (sūkṣma); because [those] lower states are not yet completely peaceful, but the feeling of neither
pleasure nor pain is completely peaceful."\textsuperscript{163}

When wholesome actions are performed in \[those\] lower states, everyone \[expects these wholesome actions to evoke\] pleasant feelings. Nobody expects them \[to evoke\] feelings which are neither pleasant nor painful. Also, no one would expect such actions \[to bring about\] painful effects. But, one \[may try to\] perform bad actions in order to seek pleasure. Even so, \[if one performs bad actions, these bad actions will necessarily\] bring about a painful effect, even though it may be unexpected \[by the perpetrator].

\[The verse says,\] "When a painful effect is realized, that \[action\] is considered an unwholesome action." It is explained that an unwholesome action brings about a painful effect; \[this\] effect \[evokes\] a painful feeling.

Not only actions bring about effects. The four aggregates, \[i.e., feeling, idea, disposition and cognition\], or the five aggregates, \[i.e., form, feeling, idea, disposition and cognition\], also bring about \[their\] effects. However, the most \[extreme case\] is an action bringing about its effect. It should be known \[again\] that \[the time when the effect is realized\] can be either certain or uncertain.

Question: What types of feelings \(\text{vedanīyata}\) are

\textsuperscript{163}MVS (Taisho, 27, 596C).
classified?

Answer:


The five types of feeling are: (1) the feeling itself (svabhāva-vedaniyatā); (2) the corresponding feeling (sampracyukta-vedaniyatā); (3) the feeling of effects (vipāka-vedaniyatā); (4) the presently arising feeling (sammukhi-bhāva-vedaniyatā) and (5) the feeling of sense-objects (ālambana-vedaniyatā). 164

'The feeling itself' indicates feeling (vedanā). 'The corresponding feeling' indicates dharmas corresponding to [and evoking] feeling, [i.e., tangibility (sparśa)]. 'The feeling of effects' indicates pleasant feeling and so on, [which are brought about by] actions. 'The presently arising feeling' indicates the feeling [occurring] at the present [moment]. The Mahāniddanā-sutta explains thus: "When a pleasant feeling is arising at the present moment, the other two feelings, [i.e., painful feeling and neither pleasant nor painful feeling], are extinguished." 165

164 See AK, p. 229, 8-18.

165 Madhyamāgama (Taisho, 1, 580A).
feeling of sense-objects' is explained [thus]: "[Material form] is perceived through the eyes and then a response [toward the material form occurs]. [That is, the material form] is the object [of feeling]."

It should be known that among these five types of feeling, we have explained only the feeling of effects, not the others.

---

166 *Samyuktāgama* (Taisho, 1, 90C).
3. The Four-fold Division of Action

AH (814C, 1-18)

Question: The World-Honored One has explained four [types of] actions: (1) black [action bringing about] black effect (kṛṣṇa-kṛṣṇa-vipāka-karma); (2) white [action bringing about] white effect (śukla-śukla-vipāka-karma); (3) [either] black [or] white [action bringing about either] black [or] white effect (kṛṣṇa-śukla-kṛṣṇa-śukla-vipāka-karma) and (4) neither black nor white [action bringing about] no effect (aṇaśuklavipāka-karma). What are they?

Answer:


[The verse says,] "Wholesome actions in the realm of form are white [action bringing about] white effect." Wholesome action in the realm of form bring about 'white' effects because [these actions] are always pure and are free from unwholesome [thought]. [So,] these [actions] always bring

167 AN, II, 230; DN, III, 230; Madhyamāgama (Taisho, 1, 600A); MVS (Taisho, 27, 589C).
about extremely wholesome effects. In this way, [these actions] are called 'white [action bringing about] white effect.'

[The verse says,] "Black-white [actions] are in the realm of desire." Wholesome actions in the realm of desire [are considered] [either] black [or] white [action bringing about either] black [or] white effect. Why? As [the nature of] these [actions] is weak, [these actions] are [easily] affected by [that which is] unwholesome. Therefore, these [actions] are called '[(either) black [or] white [actions]].' These [actions also] bring about mixed effects, i.e., [(either) a pleasant [effect or] an unpleasant [one]. [These effects are], therefore, called '[(either) black [or] white effects].'

[The verse says,] "[Black action bringing about] black effect is considered an impure [action]." This 'black' [action] indicates impure, [in other words], unwholesome [action]. [This black action] produces bad [effect and] is vile. In this way, the effect is called 'black effect'.

(26a-d) IF ONE'S VOLITION CAN COMPLETELY ERADICATE THESE [THREE TYPES OF ACTIONS] AND [THESE ACTIONS] DO NOT REMAIN, HE/SHE WILL BE IN THE PATH OF IMMEDIATE SUCCESSION. [HIS/HER ACTIONS IN THAT STATE] ARE CONSIDERED THE FOURTH ACTION.

The path in which one is able to eradicate these three
[types of] action is [called] 'the path of immediate succession' (ānantaryamārga).\textsuperscript{168} If one maintains his/her volition in [at that state], his/her volition will be the fourth action, [i.e., neither black nor white action bringing about neither black nor white effect].

Among [various states] in the path of cultivation (bhāvanāmārga), four [types of] volition\textsuperscript{169} eradicate the second action, [i.e., white action bringing about white effect].

The thirteen [types of volition are included] in the [following] two paths: four [types of volition] in the path of vision (darśanamārga) and nine [types of volition] in the path of cultivation.\textsuperscript{170} These [types of] volition are uncontaminated. [They] neither grow [that which is] unwholesome, i.e., neither black, nor [bring about] pleasant [effects], i.e., nor white, because [these types of volition] are no [longer] relevant to the infinite [transmigration (samsāra)].

\textsuperscript{168} See AK, p.327.

\textsuperscript{169} ibid.

\textsuperscript{170} ibid.
Commentary (896B.10-C.9)

Question: The World-Honored One has explained four [types of] action, i.e., 'black [action bringing about] black effect' and so on. Why are they established?

Answer:


(The verse says,) "Wholesome actions in the realm of form are white [action bringing about] white effect." Wholesome actions in the realm of form are always [carried out] without [a bad mental state such as] anger. [That is, these actions are] free from 'black' [or unwholesome].

Question: Actions in the realm of formlessness are more [wholesome] than those in the realm of form. Why are [these actions] not explained?

Answer: [Actions] in the realm of form [bring about] two [types of effects]: [the effects realized in] the state of the embryo (upapatti-bhava) and [the effects realized in] the interval between one's death and his/her next life (antarā-bhava).\(^{171}\) In the realm of formlessness, however,

\(^{171}\)See translation part, p.117.
[the effects are] only [realized in] the state of the embryo. Likewise, [in the realm of form], the effects are realized [through that which possesses] form, and, [therefore], is visible and is effected when it is acted upon by something else; [the effects in the realm of formlessness are, however, realized through that which does not possess] form, and, [therefore,] is neither visible nor effected when it is acted upon by something else. Also in the [realm of form, various] effects are realized [through] three [types of] action, [i.e., body, speech and mind-action], the five aggregates and the ten wholesome courses of action. [But, in the realm of formlessness, the effects are realized only through mind-action, i.e., the three courses of mind-action. For that reason, actions in the realm of formlessness are not explained here].

[The verse says,] "Black-white [actions] are in the realm of desire." [Actions] in the realm of desire are mixed, [both] wholesome and unwholesome actions. Therefore, [these actions] are considered [either] black [or] white [action]. Also, two types of actions, [i.e., wholesome and unwholesome actions], are performed and two types of effects [are brought about]. Therefore, [these actions in the realm of desire] are explained thus: ['either black or

\textsuperscript{172}MVS (Taisho, 27, 590C).
white action bringing about either black or white effect."

That which is not 'black' [or unwholesome] indicates that which is 'white' [or wholesome] because its mark differs from black.

[The verse says,] "[If] both [an action and its effect] are black, [this action] is considered an impure [action]."

Black indicates unwholesome action; it brings about a black effect. [This type of action] is caused by [that which is] contaminated. As [this action] is contaminated, [it is] called 'black [action]' Also, as [its effect] is vile or bad, [it is] called 'black effect'. [If] a vile [effect were caused by that which is] not contaminated, [the effect] would not be [called] 'contaminated-black'.

(51a-d) IF ONE'S VOLITION CAN COMPLETELY ERADICATE THESE [THREE TYPES OF ACTIONS] AND [THESE ACTIONS] DO NOT REMAIN, HE/SHE WILL BE IN THE PATH OF IMMEDIATE SUCCESSION. [HIS/HER ACTIONS IN THAT STATE] ARE CONSIDERED THE FOURTH ACTION.

When [one's] volition is accompanied by the path in which one is able to eradicate these three [types of] action, the [volition] is considered the forth action [i.e., neither black nor white action bringing about neither black nor white effect]. This [type of] action is neither contaminated, i.e., neither black, nor [brings about] pleasant [effect], i.e., nor white. [This type of action] is
no [longer] relevant to the world [of transmigration], nor do effects [occur].

Question: Which type of volition eradicates [these three types of] action?


[The verse says,] "It is explained that twelve [types of] volition eradicate [black action bringing about] black effect." Black action [bringing about black effect] is eradicated by twelve [types of] volition: [one's] volition accompanied by 'the patience which issues from the knowledge of the Four Noble Truths' (cetasṣu dharma-jñāna-kṣaṇīṇa) in the path of vision and [one's] volition accompanied by the eight [types of] 'uninterrupted path' (ānantaryamarga) in the path of cultivation, which are free from desire in the realm of desire.173

[The verse says,] "Four [types of] volition eradicate white [action bringing about white effect]." Four [types of] volition eradicate white action [bringing about white effect]: [one's] volition accompanied by the ninth,

173 MVS (Taisho, 27, 591B.29ff); AK, p. 236.1ff.
uninterrupted path in the first through the fourth meditation, [which are] free from desire [in the realm of desire]. Wholesome and uncontaminated dharma is eradicated by the final, [i.e., ninth], uninterrupted path.\textsuperscript{174}

[The verse says,) "One [specific type of] volition eradicates two [types of actions]." \textquoteright{}One's\textquoteright{} volition accompanied by the ninth uninterrupted path, which is free from desire in the realm of desire, eradicates both black action [bringing about black effect] and [either] black [or] white action [bringing about either black or white effect].\textsuperscript{175}

\footnotesize
\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{174}MVS (Taisho, 27, 591B.29ff); AK, p. 236.1ff.
\item \textsuperscript{175}ibid.
\end{itemize}
4. The Three False Actions

AH (814C.14-24)

Question: The World-Honored One explained that [one's] body, speech and mind-[actions possess the nature of] crookedness (kaṭṭilya), dirtiness (dosa) and impurity (kasāya).\(^{176}\) What are these [three natures] ?

Answer:

(27a-d) CROOKEDNESS ARISES FROM GUILE, DIRTINESS ARISES FROM ANGER AND [THAT WHICH] ARISES FROM GREED IS IMPURITY. THIS IS EXPLAINED BY THE WORLD-HONORED ONE.

[The verse says,] "Crookedness arises from guile." An action which arises from [a mental state of] guile (śāthya) [possesses the nature of] crookedness because [the action] is one of deceit.

"Dirtiness arises from anger" indicates that an action which arises from [a mental state of] anger [possesses the nature of] dirtiness because [the action] always causes strife.

[The verse says,] "...[that which] arises from greed is impurity. This is explained by the World-Honored One." An action which arises from [a mental state of] greed [possesses the nature of] impurity because [the action] is

\(^{176}\)See **MVS** (Taisho 27, 608C); **AK**, p. 234,19ff.
always contaminated by [the passion of greed].
Commentary (896C.9-20)

Question: The World-Honored One explained [the nature of] crookedness (kauṭilya), dirtiness (dosa) and impurity (kaśāya) [of one's actions]. What are these [three natures]?

Answer:

(53a-d) CROOKEDNESS ARISES FROM GUILE, DIRTINESS ARISES FROM ANGER AND [THAT WHICH] ARISES FROM GREED IS IMPURITY. THIS IS EXPLAINED BY THE WORLD-HONORED ONE.

[The verse says,] "Crookedness arises from guile." [The mental state of] guile (śāthya) is considered [to be] crooked. 'Crookedness' indicates an action which arises from dharmas [which possess] the nature of crookedness. This [action] is, [therefore], the effect of crookedness. [The mental state of] guile is [also] called crookedness because [it arises from] a perverse [thought], just like an unstraight stick. [In this way,] it is difficult for one [whose path] is obstructed by guile to free oneself from [the cyclic world of] birth and death and to enter Nirvāṇa.

[The verse says,] "Dirtiness arises from anger." There are two types of dirtiness: (1) dirtiness of one's own body and (2) dirtiness of other's bodies. [The mental state of] anger is considered to be dirty. Dirtiness, [therefore,] indicates an action which arises from dharmas [which
possess] the nature of dirtiness. This [action] is, [therefore], the effect of dirtiness. It indicates that an action which arises from [the mental state of] anger [possesses the nature of] dirtiness because [the action] always causes strife.

[The verse says,] "...[that which] arises from greed is impurity. It is explained by the World-Honored One." [The mental state of] greed is considered to be impure because it [possesses] the nature of contamination [by passion]. [Therefore,] an action which arises from [the mental state of] greed is called impurity. [In this way,] it is explained [that the action is] the effect of [the mental state of greed]; the effect, [i.e., impure action], is similar to its cause, [i.e., the mental state of greed], [possesses the nature of] impurity because [the action] is always contaminated by [the passion of greed].
5. Mind and Mental States Causing Actions

Commentary (896C.20-897A.17)*

Question: What types [of mind or mental states] cause (samutthāna) [actions]?

Answer:


[The verse says,] "There are two types of [mind or mental states which] cause [actions]: [one's mind or mental states which] cause [actions] (hetu-samutthāna) and [one's mind or mental states which] occur [with actions] momentarily (ksana-samutthāna)." There are two types of [mind or mental states which] cause [actions]. [One's mind or mental states which] cause [actions] indicates [the state in which] he/she is about to carry out an action. [One's mind or mental states which] occur [with actions] momentarily indicates that he/she carries out an action [after he/she] intends [to do so]."\textsuperscript{177}

Question: Among the two [types of mind or mental states

\textsuperscript{177}A more detailed discussion is found in AK, p. 203.5ff.
which] cause [actions], which one generates (pravartaka) [actions] ? Which one follows (anuvartaka) [actions] ?

Answer: The former [type of mind or mental states, i.e., one's mind or mental states which] cause [actions] indicates [that which] generates [actions]. The latter [type of mind or mental states, i.e., one's mind or mental states] occur [with actions] momentarily] indicates [that which] follows [actions].

Question: Among the five senses and cognition, which one [is included in that which] generates [actions] ? Which one [is included in "that which] follows [actions] ?

Answer:

(55a-d) WHEN ONE [IS TRAINED] IN THE PATH OF CULTIVATION, [HIS/HER] COGNITION IS [INCLUDED IN] BOTH TYPES. THE FIVE SENSES ARE [INCLUDED IN] ONE TYPE. IT IS EXPLAINED THAT THE OTHER, THAT IS, UNCONTAMINATED [MIND IS INCLUDED IN ONE TYPE].

[The verse says,] "When one [is trained] in the path of cultivation, [his/her] cognition is [included in] both types." One's cognition (mano-vijñāna) trained in the path of cultivation is [included in] both [that which] generates [actions] and [that which] follows [actions]. His/her [mind in that state] can generate actions.¹⁷⁸ These [actions] are wholesome, unwholesome or indeterminate. When one's

¹⁷⁸ MVS (Taisho, 27, 610A.10ff); AK, p. 203.13ff.
wholesome [mind] generates [an action], a wholesome [action] follows. Unwholesome and indeterminate [actions] are likewise.

Indeterminate [actions] indicate daily routines, artistic skill [and so on]. When one's mind generates daily routines, [daily routines] follow. [One may think that after one's mind generates daily routines, that mind] disappears and either a wholesome or a defiled mind [will then] occur. But, that is untrue, for [one's mind] arises momentarily. This is just like a wheel of fire. Artistic skill is likewise.\textsuperscript{179}

As mentioned before, if [one's] mind is the retribution [for past actions], it will not generate any body and speech-actions.\textsuperscript{180}

[The verse says,] "The five senses are [included in] one type." The five senses are not considered [to be] [that which] generates [actions] but [to be that which] follows [actions] because [senses only] perceive what is performed without possessing [their own] thoughts.\textsuperscript{181}

[The verse says,] "It is explained that the other, that is the uncontaminated [mind is included in one type]." The

\textsuperscript{179}MVS (Taisho, 27, 610B.1ff).

\textsuperscript{180}See translation part, p.131.

\textsuperscript{181}MVS (Taisho, 27, 610A.7ff); AK, p. 204.8ff.
other indicates one's mind trained in the path of vision. It is [included in that which] generates [actions] because it can cause [actions]. [Therefore,] it is not [that which] follows [actions]. As one's mind trained in the path of vision is subtle and introverted, it does not follow body and speech-actions.¹⁸²

[One may ask thus:] "If one's mind trained in the path of vision generates body and speech-actions, which are these actions considered, [those which occur] based on the path of vision, based on the path of cultivation or based on both paths?"

[Answer: To say that these actions occur] based on the path of vision is false. No [material] form exists in the path of vision. [Therefore, body and speech-actions which possess material form do not exist in the path of vision. Also, material form concerns both] right-view and wrong-view. [But, one trained in the path of vision possesses only right-view. Therefore, this statement] is false.¹⁸³

[The statement that these actions occur] based on the path of cultivation is false. Never does one's mind trained in the path of vision arise from a dharma in the path of cultivation. [For that reason, the statement that these

¹⁸² MVS (Taisho, 27, 61OC.3ff); AK, p. 203.20ff.
¹⁸³ MVS (Taisho, 27, 61OC.14ff); AK, p. 203.23ff.
actions occur] based on both paths is also false. A sūtra explains thus: "Body and speech-actions [performed by one who possesses] wrong-view [arise from] this [wrong]-view."¹⁸⁴ This [wrong-view] is also considered to be [that which] causes [actions].

¹⁸⁴Samyuktāgama (Taisho, 2, 204A).
6. The Three Pure Actions

AH (814C.24-815A.3)

Question: The World-Honored One explained three [types of] pure (śauca) action of body, speech and mind. What are they?

Answer:

(28a-d) PURE INDICATES ALL WHOLESOME CONDUCT. SAGEHOOD INDICATES BODY AND SPEECH-[ACTIONS OF ARHATS]. SAGEHOOD OF MIND-[ACTIONS OF] ARHATS IS [NOTHING MORE THAN] THE MIND OF AN ARHAT [HIMSELF].

[The verse says,] "Pure indicates all wholesome conduct." All wholesome conduct is pure because [it is] free from passions which are impure.

Question: What is sagehood (mauneya)?

Answer: [The verse says,] "Sagehood indicates body and speech-[actions of Arhats]." Wholesome body and speech-conduct which arises from the mind of an Arhat is considered sagehood, for [Arhats] have completely removed all [kinds of] obstructions [for attaining Nirvāṇa].

[The verse says,] "Sagehood of mind-[actions of] Arhats is [nothing more than] the mind of an Arhat [himself]." Sagehood of mind-[actions of] Arhats indicates the mind of an Arhat [himself] because the mind of an Arhat has already

---

185 For example, Madhyamāgama (Taisho, 1, 449C).
attained the characteristics of a 'Muni', [i.e., 'sage']. 
Commentary (897A.17-B.3)

Question: What are the three types of pure action?\textsuperscript{186}

Answer:

(56a-d) Pure indicates all wholesome conduct. Body and speech—[actions of] arhats indicate sagehood. Sagehood of mind—[actions of] arhats is nothing more than the mind of an arhat [himself].

[The verse says,] "Pure indicates all wholesome conduct." All wholesome conduct is considered to be pure. For example, wholesome body-conduct is called 'pure (\textit{s\textcircled{u}uca}) body-conduct'. The others, [i.e., speech and mind-conduct], are likewise.

Question: [These actions of unenlightened beings are still categorized in] contaminated (\textit{s\textcircled{a}rava}) dharmas which are defiled [by passions]. Why are these [actions] considered to be pure?

Answer: [The nature of wholesome conduct] differs from [that of] passions. [Also, this wholesome conduct will in turn] bring about the ultimately pure [dharmas, i.e., uncontaminated (\textit{an\textcircled{s}rava}) dharmas].

\textsuperscript{186} The same discussion is found in \textit{MVS} (Taisho, 27, 611A.8ff); \textit{AK}, p. 237.1ff.
Question: What is sagehood (mauneyya) ?

Answer: [The verse says,] "Body and speech-[actions of] Arhats indicate sagehood." Wholesome body and speech actions performed by Arhats are considered to be sagehood. [The verse also says,] "Sagehood of mind-[actions of] Arhats is [nothing more than] the mind of an Arhat [himself]." The mind of an Arhat [himself] is considered to be sagehood of mind-[actions] because [the mind of an Arhat has already attained] the characteristics of a 'Muni', [i.e., 'sage'].

Question: Why does sagehood concern only the aggregates of form (i.e., body and speech-actions) and cognition (i.e., mind-action) ?

Answer: [From the perspective of the matter of] subtlety (sūksma), sagehood is ultimately considered the mind (i.e., the aggregate of cognition) [of a sage. However, from the perspective of the matter of] grossness (audārika), [sagehood] is recognized through the body and speech-actions (i.e., the aggregate of form) [of a sage].\(^{187}\) Therefore, [the sage, i.e.,] an Arhat [himself] is considered to be sagehood, not others, because he has destroyed the heat of passions and [completely] stops [passions from arising], increases [pure dharmas], is free from the constraints of thoughts and verbal expressions, [and so remains completely]

\(^{187}\) As for subtlety and grossness, see translation part, p.140.
silent].

Question: What is the difference between wholesome conduct (sucarita), purity (sauceya) and sagehood (mauneya)?

Answer: Wholesome actions indicate wholesome conduct; [actions] purified [by uncontaminated dharmas] indicate purity and [the mind of] a Muni indicates sagehood. Also, [actions bringing about] pleasant effects indicate wholesome conduct; [actions which] are free from passions indicate purity and [the mind which] is free from wrong-view indicates sagehood.
VII. Action and Its Effect

1. Five Effects

Commentary (897B.3-20)*

I have already explained [various] actions. [Their] effects will now be explained.


'Down-flow effect' (nigyanda-phala) indicates that a wholesome [action] arises from a wholesome [mind]. It should be known that this type [of cause] is considered 'homogeneous cause' (sabhāga-hetu).

'Maturation effect' (vipāka-phala) indicates an effect [which arises from] either [one's] pure or impure

188This section deals with so-called 'five types of effects': (1) dominant effect (adhipati-phala); (2) effort effect (puruṣakāra-phala); (3) down-flow effect (nigyanda-phala); (4) maturation effect (vipāka-phala) and (5) emancipated effect (visamyoga-phala). These five types of effects are dealt with in the second chapter of the Mā (Taisho, 28, 983A.1-886C.7), in relation to 'six types of causes (hetu)' and 'four types of necessary preconditions (pratyaya)'. An analytical interpretation on this well-known causation theory of the Sarvāstivāda is found in Alfonso Verdu, pp.67-78; David J. Kalupahana, Causality: The Central Philosophy of Buddhism, (Honolulu: The University Press of Hawaii, 1975), pp.54-66.
[mind]. It has been already explained.\(^{189}\)

If an effect is similar to maturation cause (vipāka-hetu), [this effect] is considered down-flow effect. [An effect which] is dissimilar to [its cause indicates that] [either] a wholesome or an unwholesome [action] causes an indeterminate effect.

(58a-d) SO-CALLED 'EMANCIPATED EFFECT' IS CONSIDERED [AN EFFECT WHICH IS REALIZED BY ONE WHO] IS FREE FROM DESIRE AND [ATTAINS] RIGHT-VIEW. AN EFFECT WHICH IS REALIZED THROUGH THE EFFORT [OF HUMAN ACTION] IS CONSIDERED EFFORT EFFECT.

[The verse says,] "So-called emancipated effect (visamyoga-phala) is considered [an effect which is realized by one who is] free from desire and [attains] right-view." 'Emancipated effect' indicates [any dharma which is realized when one completely] eradicates [contaminated dharmas, i.e., Nirvāṇa].

[The verse says,] "An effect which is realized through the effort [of human action] is considered effort effect (purusakāra-phala)." When an effect is realized through the effort (kāra) [of human action] and [contaminated dharmas are completely] eradicated [by the effort], this [effect] is considered effort effect.

\(^{189}\) MAS II (Taisho, 28, 885B.1-2).
(59a-d) VARIOUS DHARMAS [POSSESS] VARIOUS MARKS, [BUT] THE EFFECT [OF A DHARMA POSSESSES] ITS OWN MARK. THIS EFFECT IS CONSIDERED DOMINANT EFFECT. DHARMAS WHICH HAVE PREVIOUSLY ARisen ARE EXCLUDED.

When various dharmas which possess various marks [bring about] an effect, whether a similar or a dissimilar [effect to its cause], this [effect] is called 'dominant effect' (adhipati-phala). That is, [for this effect, everything else is its cause, i.e.,] efficient cause (kārana-hetu).^{190}

"Dharmas which have previously arisen are excluded" indicates that [dharmas which have] previously arisen are excluded [from this dominant effect because a dharma which has already arisen] cannot be the effect [of a dharma which will arise in the future.]

Question: What is the difference between dominant effect and effort effect?

Answer: Effort effect indicates that an action is performed; dominant effect indicates that the result [of the action] is received [by the performer]. That is, if one plants seeds, [he/she will] bring about a dual effect: [the growth of seeds, i.e., effort effect and the reaping of the harvest, i.e., dominant effect]. The result [of planting seeds, that which] is received [by the performer], is [the

^{190} See, Kalupahana, pp.60-66; Verdu, pp.72-73.
reaping of the harvest], i.e., dominant effect.¹⁹¹

¹⁹¹MVS (Taisho, 27, 630B).
2. Various Effects of Actions

AH (815A.3-12)

I have already explained various terms [applied to] actions. [Various] effects [of actions] will now be explained.


[The verse says,] "Both wholesome and unwholesome actions bring about two [types of] effects." Wholesome actions bring about two [types of] effects: down-flow effect (nigyanda-phala) and maturation effect (vipāka-phala). Uncontaminated (anāsrava) actions also bring about two [types of] effects: down-flow effect and emancipated effect (visamyoga-phala). Unwholesome actions also bring about two [types of] effects: down-flow effect and maturation effect.

[The verse says], "Some of the wholesome actions bring about three [types of] effects." When wholesome actions which are [still] contaminated (sāsrava) but are able to eradicate various passions, these [wholesome actions bring about] three [types of] effects: down-flow effect, maturation effect and emancipated effect.

[The verse says], "The rest of the actions are
considered [to bring about] one [type of] effect." 'The rest of actions' indicates indeterminate actions. [These actions bring about] one [type of] effect: down-flow effect. No other [types of effects are realized by these actions].

\[\text{---} \]

\[192\text{AHS (Taisho, 28, 843A.25-B.9). See also Hajime Sakurabe, Kusharon no kenkyû, p.115. The following chart represents the relationship between various actions and their effects:} \]

\[\begin{align*}
\text{Contaminated} & \quad \begin{cases} 
\text{Without passions} & \quad \text{(1); (2) and (3)} \\
\text{With passions} & \quad \begin{cases} 
\text{Wholesome} & \quad \text{(1) and (2)} \\
\text{Unwholesome} & \quad \text{(1) and (2)} \\
\text{Indeterminate} & \quad \text{(2)} 
\end{cases}
\end{cases} \\
\text{Uncontaminated} & \quad \begin{cases} 
\text{Without passions} & \quad \text{(2) and (3)} \\
\text{With passions} & \quad \text{(2)} 
\end{cases}
\end{align*}\]

* (1) indicates maturation effect; (2) down-flow effect and (3) emancipated effect.
Commentary (897B.20-898A.25)

I have already explained the general [principle of the five types of] effects. Now, I will explain that these effects [are realized through various] actions.

(60a-d) CONTAMINATED ACTIONS [PERFORMED BY ONE WHO IS IN] THE PATH OF IMMEDIATE SUCCESSION BRING ABOUT FIVE [TYPES OF] EFFECTS.
UNCONTAMINATED ACTIONS [PERFORMED BY ONE WHO IS IN] THE PATH OF IMMEDIATE SUCCESSION BRING ABOUT FOUR [TYPES OF] EFFECTS.

[The verse says], "Contaminated actions [performed by one who is in] the path of immediate succession (ānantaryāmārga)\textsuperscript{193} bring about five [types of] effects." If an ordinary [person remains] in the path of immediate succession, his/her actions will bring about five [types of] effects: (1) an effect which is similar [to its cause] will be realized, i.e., down-flow effect; (2) the result of his/her action [in that state indicates] maturation effect; (3) [when certain] passions are abandoned [in] the [path of immediate succession], the [result is called] emancipated effect; (4) [an effect] realized through his/her [effort]

\textsuperscript{193}This is a state in which the possession of passions is abandoned and is immediately succeeded by the path of liberation (vimuktimārga). AK, p. 381.19ff. See also Paul Griffith, \textit{Indian Buddhist Meditation-Theory...} pp.212-230.
and [the act of] abandoning [certain passions in the path of immediate succession indicate] effort effect, and (5) all [existing] dharmas except for him/herself indicate dominant effect.

[The verse says], "Uncontaminated actions [performed by one who is in] the path of immediate succession bring about four [types of] effects." Uncontaminated actions [performed by a sacred one who is in] the path of immediate succession bring about four [types of] effects: [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding maturation effect. The other effects are considered as the above-mentioned.


[The verse says], "Unwholesome actions bring about four [types of] effects. The rest, i.e., wholesome actions [which are still] contaminated are likewise." Unwholesome actions [bring about] four [types of] effects. 194

-----------

194 The four types effects are: (1) maturation effect; (2) down-flow effect; (3) dominant effect and (4) effort effect. Emancipated effect is never realized by unwholesome actions.
"The rest of various wholesome actions [which are still] contaminated", except for [wholesome actions performed by one who is in] the path of immediate succession, indicates [thus]: [wholesome actions performed by one who is in the state of] the path of application (prayogamārga), the path of liberation (vimuktimārga) and the path of attainment (viṣegamārga)\(^{195}\) as well as [wholesome actions which have arisen from] the wisdom of listening (śūta-maya) and so on. These actions also bring about four [types of] effect; [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding emancipated effect.

[The verse says], "The rest of the uncontaminated [actions] bring about three [types of] effects. Indeterminate actions are likewise." The rest of various uncontaminated actions as well as indeterminate actions, except for uncontaminated actions [performed by one who is in] the path of immediate succession, bring about three [types of] effects; [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding maturation effect and emancipated effect.


\(^{195}\)AK, p.381.19ff. See also Griffiths, pp.212-230.
If a wholesome action brings about a wholesome dharma, [this effect would be considered one of] the [following] four [types of] effects: [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding maturation effect. [If a wholesome action brings about] an unwholesome dharma, this effect would be considered one of] the [following] two [types of] effects: effort effect or dominant effect. [If a wholesome action brings about] an indeterminate dharma, this effect would be considered one of] the [following] three [types of] effects: [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding down-flow effect and emancipated effect.

If an unwholesome action brings about an unwholesome dharma, [this effect would be considered one of] the [following] three [types of] effects: [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding maturation effect and emancipated effect. [If an unwholesome action brings about] an indeterminate dharma, [this effect would be considered one of] the [following] four [types of] effects: [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding emancipated effect. [If an wholesome action], acting as a homogeneous cause (sabhāga-hetu) or an all-pervading cause" (sarvatraqa-hetu), [brings about] an indeterminate dharma [concomitant with] 'the wrong view that there exists an individual person' (satkāya-drsti) or 'the wrong view which grasps extremes' (antagrāha-drsti) in the realm of desire, [this
effect] would be considered down-flow effect, [because the
effect is a contaminated-indeterminate dharma.] 196 [If an
unwholesome action brings about] a wholesome dharma, [this
effect would be considered one of] the [following] two
[types of] effects: effort effect or dominant effect.

If an indeterminate action brings about an
indeterminate dharma, [this effect would be considered one
of] the [following] three [types of] effects: maturation
effect, effort effect or dominant effect. [If an
indeterminate action brings about] a wholesome dharma, [this
effect would be considered one of] the [following] two
[types of] effects: effort effect or dominant effect. [If an
indeterminate action brings about] an unwholesome dharma,
[this effect would be considered one of] the [following]
three [types of] effects: [the five types of above mentioned
effects] excluding maturation effect and emancipated effect.

196 The Sarvāstivāda enumerates five types of wrong-view
as human proclivities (ānuṣaya): (1) satkāya-drsti or 'the
wrong-view that there exists an individual person'; (2)
antagrāha-drsti or 'the wrong-view which grasps extremes';
(3) mithyā-drsti or 'wrong-view per se'; (4) drsti-parāmarśa
or 'clinging to wrong-view' and (5) śilavrata-parāmarśa or
'clinging to morality and religious vows'. AK, p. 281.20 ff.
See also Griffiths, pp. 269–282.

[The verse says], "[Actions] in the past [bring about] the four [types of effects] in all [three time periods]." If actions in the past bring about dharmas in all three time periods, [these effects would be considered one of] the [following] four [types of effects]: emancipated effect is excluded [among the five types of effects], because [it is attained] irrelevant to the time period.

[The verse says], "[Actions] in the middle-[time] also [bring about] the same [types of effects] in the future." If an action in the present brings about a dharma in the future, [this effect would be considered one of] the four [types of] effects: these are explained as above-mentioned.

[The verse say], "[Actions] in the middle-[time] are considered [to bring about] the two [types of effects] in the middle-[time]." If an action in the present brings about a dharma in the present, [this effect would be considered one of] the [following] two [types of] effects: effort effect or dominant effect.

[The verse says], "[Actions] in the future [bring about] the three [types of effects] in the future." If an action in the future brings about a dharma in the future, [this effect would be considered one of] the [following] three [types of] effects: maturation effect, effort effect
or dominant effect.


[The verse says], "[Actions] in a certain state [bring about] the four [types of effects] in that state." If an action in a certain state brings about a dharma in the [same] state, [this effect would be considered one of] the four [types of] effects: emancipated effect is excluded [among the five types of effects]. [Actions] related to the realm of desire [bring about the effects] related to the realm of desire; [emancipated effect is never realized there]. Also, [actions] in 'the state of neither conceptualization nor non-conceptualization' (naivasamjñānasamjñā)¹⁹⁷ are likewise, [because, actions in that state in which emancipated effect has been already acquired, will not bring about the effects as emancipated effect.]

[The verse says], "[Actions in a certain state bring about] the two [types of effects] in the other states." If an action in a certain state brings about a dharma in

¹⁹⁷See AK, p. 366.1ff.
another state, [this effect would be considered one of] the two [types of effects]: effort effect or dominant effect. If an uncontaminated action [in a certain state brings about] an uncontaminated [dharma] in another state, [this effect would be considered] down-flow effect.

[The verse says], "[Actions] in the state of right-view bring about emancipated effect." [If one performs an action] in the higher meditative states, [as a result], emancipated effect would be realized. That is, [this effect is realized] as the result of the path of immediate succession.

(65a-d) ALL [HUMAN BEINGS ARE CLASSIFIED INTO] THREE [TYPES]. [ONE TYPE BRINGS ABOUT] THE THREE, TWO OR ONE [TYPE OF EFFECT]. ALSO, [ANOTHER TYPE BRINGS ABOUT] THE FIVE OR TWO [TYPES OF EFFECTS]. IN THIS WAY, THE ACTIONS OF AN ARHAT, AND SO ON, ARE EXPLAINED.

[If] an action [performed] by a non-Arhat (śaiksa) [causes the state of] a non-Arhat, [this result would be considered one of] the [following] three [types of] effects: down-flow effect, effort effect or dominant effect. [If an action performed by a non-Arhat causes the state of] an Arhat, [the result would be considered one of] the three [types of] effects; these [three types] are the above-mentioned. [If an action performed by a non-arhat causes the state of] neither a non-Arhat nor an Arhat, [the result would be considered]
one of] the three [types of] effects: emancipated effect, effort effect or dominant effect.

[If] an action [performed by] an Arhat [causes the state of] an Arhat, [the result would be considered one of] the [following] three [types of] effects: down-flow effect, effort effect or dominant effect. [If an action performed by an Arhat causes the state of] neither a non-Arhat nor an Arhat, [the result would be considered one of] the two [types of] effects: effort effect or dominant effect. [If an action performed by an arhat causes the state of] a non-Arhat, [the result would be considered] one [type of] effect: dominant effect.

[If] an action [performed by one who is] neither a non-Arhat nor an Arhat [causes the state of] neither a non-Arhat nor an Arhat, [the result would be considered one of] the five [types of] effects. [If an action performed by one who is neither a non-Arhat nor an Arhat causes the state of] a non-Arhat, [the result would be considered one of] the two [types of] effects: effort effect or dominant effect. [If an action performed by one who is neither a non-arhat nor an arhat causes the state of] an arhat, [the result would be considered one of] the two [types of] effects; they are the above-mentioned.

(66a-d) [ONE TYPE OF ACTION] IS CONSIDERED [TO BRING ABOUT] THE THREE, FOUR OR ONE [TYPE OF EFFECT]. [THE OTHER
TYPES OF ACTION BRINGS ABOUT] THE FOUR, THREE OR TWO [TYPES OF EFFECTS].
[ANOTHER TYPE OF ACTION BRINGS ABOUT] THE FOUR, ONE OR TWO [TYPES OF EFFECTS]. THESE ARE CONSIDERED

[If] an action [performed by those whose passions are] abandoned on "the path of vision" [brings about a state in which passions are] abandoned on the path of vision, [the result would be considered one of] the [following] three [types of] effects: down-flow effect, effort effect or dominant effect. [If an action performed by those whose passions are abandoned on the path of vision brings about a state in which passions are] abandoned on the path of cultivation, [the result would be considered one of] the four [types of] effects: [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding emancipated effect. [If an action performed by those whose passions are abandoned on the path of vision brings about a state in which passions are] completely abandoned, [the result will be considered] one [type of] effect: dominant effect.

[If] an action [performed by those whose passions are] abandoned on the path of cultivation [brings about a state in which passions are] abandoned on the path of cultivation, [the result would be considered one of] the four [types of] effects: [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding emancipated effect. [If an action performed by
those whose passions are abandoned on the path of cultivation brings about a state in which passions are] completely abandoned, [the result would be considered one of] the three [types of] effects: emancipated effect, effort effect or dominant effect. [If an action performed by those whose passions are abandoned on the path of cultivation brings about a state in which passions are] abandoned on the path of vision, [the result would be considered one of] the two [types of] effects: effort effect or dominant effect.

[If] an action [performed by those whose passions are] completely abandoned [brings about a state in which passions are] completely abandoned, [the result would be considered one of] the four [types of] effects: [the five types of above-mentioned effects] excluding maturation effect. [If an action performed by those whose passions are] completely abandoned [brings about a state in which passions are] abandoned on the path of vision, [the result would be considered] one [type of] effect: dominant effect. [If an action performed by those whose passions are] completely abandoned [brings about a state in which passions are] abandoned on the path of cultivation, [the result would be considered] the two [types of] effects: effort effect or dominant effect.
3. Actions and The Four Great Elements

AH (815A.12-22)

(30a-d) [ONE'S] BODY AND SPEECH-ACTIONS ARE BASED ON THE GREAT ELEMENTS IN ONE'S OWN REALM. UNCONTAMINATED ACTIONS ARE PERFORMED ACCORDING TO THE POWER OF THE GREAT ELEMENTS. THAT IS, THESE ACTIONS ARE THE EFFECTS OF THE GREAT ELEMENTS.

[The verse says], "One's body and speech-actions are based on the great elements (mahā-bhūta) in one's own realm." Various actions [performed] in the realm of desire are based on the four great elements in the realm of desire because those [body and speech-actions] are derivative (bhautika) matter from the great elements. Actions in the realm of form are likewise.

Question: What about uncontaminated actions?

Answer: [The verse says], "Uncontaminated actions are performed according to the power of the great elements. That is, these actions are the effect of the great elements." When uncontaminated forms, (i.e., actions), are performed [in a certain realm, these actions are] based on the four great elements in that realm. For example, when one attains the [uncontaminated] path dwelling in the realm of desire, those actions are based on the four great elements in the realm of desire. The other realms are likewise. [Another] example is that even if one's life [in the realm
of form] is terminated and one is born into the realm of formlessness, his/her future [unmanifested] body and speech-actions (i.e., Anāsrava-saṃvara) are acquired in the realm of formlessness. Nevertheless, his/her actions [are still considered to be] derivative matter of the four great elements in the realm [of form].
Commentary (898A.25-B.13)

I have already explained that actions bring about [various types of] effects. Now, I will explain that body and speech-actions are based on the four great elements.


[The verse says], "One's body and speech-actions are based on the great [elements] (mahā-bhūta) in one's own realm." Body and speech-actions [performed] in the realm of desire are based on the [four] great [elements] in the realm of desire. Body and speech-actions in the first meditative state in the realm of form are based on the four great elements in the first meditative state [in the realm of form]. [Body and speech-actions in the second, third] and forth meditative states are likewise. [Actions are always] concomitant with passions and are related to the realm [in which one exists].

[The verse says], "Uncontaminated actions are performed according to the power [of the great elements]. That is, these [actions are] the effect of the [great elements]." Uncontaminated body and speech-actions are performed
according to the power of the four great elements in the realm [in which one exists]. For example, when one performs uncontaminated body and speech-actions, such as those actions in the first through fourth meditative states, dwelling in the realm of desire, his/her actions are based on the four great elements in the realm of desire. The other stages are likewise. [Uncontaminated dharmas are] no longer concomitant with passions and are not related to the realm [in which one exists].

When one who attains 'the knowledge of the doctrine' (dharmanjñāna)\textsuperscript{198} [of the Four Noble Truths in the realm of desire] or 'the knowledge of the succession' (anvayajñāna)\textsuperscript{199} [of the Four Noble Truths in the realm of form and formlessness, such an individual as] the one who is prepared to become a stream-winner (srotāpanna-pratipannaka), the stream-winner (srotāpanna-phala), the one who is prepared to become a once-returner (sakṛtāgāmin-pratipannaka), the once-returner (sakṛtāgāmin-phala), the one who is prepared to become a never-returner (anāgāmin-pratipannaka), the never-returner (anāgāmin-phala),\textsuperscript{200} the

\textsuperscript{198} This is the knowledge that one understands the Four Noble truths in the realm of desire. See AK, p. 350/11ff.

\textsuperscript{199} This is the knowledge that one understands the Four Noble Truths in the realm of form or formlessness. See AK, p. 350.18ff.

\textsuperscript{200} See translation part, p.155.
Buddha, becoming a Buddha for himself (pratyeka-buddha), a Buddha's disciple (śrāvaka) and a Bodhisattva, [perform actions] through his/her body in the realm of desire in the present time, all his/her actions arise based on the four great elements in the realm of desire. Likewise, [when actions are performed through] one's body in the realm of form in the present time, all his/her actions arise based on the four great elements in the realm of form.

If a non-Arhat is born in the realm of formlessness, (Anāśrava)-samvara of the future would be acquired in the fifth [liminal meditative (sāmantakadhyāna)] stage [in the realm of formlessness]. If he has attained the uncontaminated path (anāśrava-mārga) in the previous stage, [i.e., the realm of form], (Anāśrava samvara of the future is acquired] through his past actions in the [previous] stage. If one attains Arhatship, i.e., 'one who needs no training' (asaikṣa), (Anāśrava)-samvara of the future will be acquired in the fifth [liminal meditative] stage [in the realm of formlessness].
VIII. The Three Obstacles to Attaining Enlightenment

1. The Three Obstacles

AH (815A.23-27)

Question: The World-Honored One has explained the three obstacles [to attaining enlightenment]: 'obstacle by actions' (karmāvarana), 'obstacle by passions' (kleśāvarana) and 'obstacle by retribution' (vipākāvarana). What is the characteristic [of each obstacle]?

Answer:

(31a-d) COMMITTING ETERNALLY, DEADLY SINS; BEING EXTENSIVELY PASSIONATE AND EXPERIENCING BAD DESTINIES AS RETRIBUTION, THESE [THREE] ARE KNOWN TO BE THE OBSTACLES.

These three types of obstacles always prevent one from attaining the sacred dharma. Therefore, they are considered the obstacles [to attaining enlightenment].
Commentary (898B.13-898C.18)

Question: The World-Honored One has explained the three [types of] obstacles [to attaining enlightenment]. What are they?

Answer:

(68a-d) COMMITTING ETERNALLY, DEADLY SINS; BEING EXTENSIVELY PASSIONATE AND EXPERIENCING BAD DESTINIES AS RETRIBUTION, THESE [THREE] ARE KNOWN TO BE THE OBSTACLES.

The three [types of] obstacles are: 'obstacle by actions' (karmāvaraṇa), 'obstacle by passions' (kleśāvaraṇa) and 'obstacle by retribution' (vipākāvaraṇa). [These three] prevent [one from attaining] the sacred path and practicing on the sacred path. Therefore, they are considered the obstacles [to attaining enlightenment]. Besides these three obstacles, the other dharmas also prevent [one from attaining enlightenment]. But, these three obstacles are much easier to see and comprehend [than the others] for the [following] five reasons: (1) basis (adhiṣṭhāna); (2) destiny (yati); (3) birth (upapatti); (4) effect (phala) and (5) person (pudgala).

'Obstacle by actions' indicates that one commits the [following] five [types of] eternally deadly sins (ānantarya-karma): (1) killing one's own father; (2) killing one's own mother; (3) killing an arhat; (4)
destroying the Buddhist community and (5) causing the Buddha's body to bleed. If one commits an obstacle by actions, he/she will be born [and remain] in hell eternally. It is, therefore, called 'eternally [deadly sin]'\textsuperscript{201}.

There are two reasons [why he/she will be born and remain in hell] eternally: he/she is ungrateful and is destroying the 'meritorious field' (pu\'\textit{hya}-k\textit{setra})\textsuperscript{202} [for the Buddhist teaching]. [The act of] killing one's own parents indicates that he/she is eternally ungrateful. The other [acts are considered] to eternally destroy the meritorious field [for the Buddhist teaching].

The most sinful [act among others] is [the act of] destroying the Buddhist community; second [is the act of] causing the Buddha's body to bleed; [third is the act of] killing an arhat; [fourth is the act of] killing one's own mother and [fifth is the act of] killing one's own father. A more detailed discussion is found in the 'Miscellaneous' chapter.\textsuperscript{203}

'Obstacle by passions' indicates frequently occurring and intense passions. The passions of sentient beings are

\textsuperscript{201}\textit{KVS} (Taisho, 27, 600A.26ff); \textit{AK}, p. 259.8ff.

\textsuperscript{202}It refers to the Buddha or monks, because merit accrues to a person who makes offering to him, just as a field yields harvests.

\textsuperscript{203}\textit{MAS} (Taisho, 28, 954C.2ff).
either those which frequently occur or those which are intense. [These passions are explained] by employing the following four categories: (1) passions which frequently occur but are not intense; (2) passions which are intense but do not frequently occur; (3) passions which both frequently occur and are intense and (4) passions which neither frequently occur nor are intense. [Among others], passions which frequently occur but are not intense are considered an obstacle by passions. If a passion is not intense but frequently occurs, the passion will be [in the process of] becoming more intense.

Passions which are intense but do not frequently occur are not considered an obstacle by passions because [these passions] do not frequently occur. [Passions which] both [frequently occur and are intense] are all evil [passions]. [Passions which] neither [frequently occur nor are intense] are all superior [passions]. It should be known that the wholesome roots are likewise.

An obstacle is established by [actually] occurring passions. Possessing [passions alone] is not [considered an obstacle] for all sentient beings possess passions [until they attain enlightenment].

[The following are people who possess] the obstacle by passions: sexually impotent people (sandha), [the people
like] Vāśpa,²⁰⁴ Pūraṇa-kāśyapa²⁰⁵ and [the people like] Nanda, Āṅgulimāla, Uruvīla-kāśyapa²⁰⁶ and so on. [Despite possessing the obstacle by passions], these [people] could [eventually] attain the path of vision due to the power of the Buddha's preaching. [People like] Śāriputra²⁰⁷ an so on were not like these [people].

'Obstacle by retribution' indicates that one is born in the [three bad] destinies, [i.e., hell, hungry ghost and animal], in the North-continent or in 'the heaven of unconsciousness' (asamjñī)²⁰⁸.

²⁰⁴ One of the Buddha's five disciples. He possessed the passion of anger. See MVS (Taisho, 27, 599C.1ff); Kokuyaku, bidonbu, 20, p.177.

²⁰⁵ One of six non-Buddhist philosophers. He possessed the passion of delusion. See MVS (Taisho, 27, 599C.1ff); Kokuyaku, bidonbu, 20, p.177.

²⁰⁶ Nanda represents those who possess the passion of greed; Āṅgulimāla the passion of anger and Uruvīla-kāśyapa the passion of delusion. See MVS (Taisho, 27, 599C.1ff); Kokuyaku, bidonbu, 20, p.177.

²⁰⁷ Śāriputra was one of the ten disciples of the Buddha and was well known for his intelligence. He attained the path of vision by himself. See MVS (Taisho, 27, 599C.1ff); Kokuyaku, bidonbu, 20, p.177.

²⁰⁸ This is the unconscious state which is attained in the fourth meditaiton of the realm of form. This state is desired and striven for only by ordinary men, those who have not entered the noble Buddhist path and who have therefore no real insight into Buddhist teaching. For the Sarvāstivādins, this state is listed as one of the dharmas disssociated from mind (cittaviprayuktasamskāra-dharma). AK, p. 25.9ff. See also Griffiths, pp.255-268.
Question: Which is the worst among these [three] obstacles?

Answer:

(69a-d) THE SO-CALLED OBSTACLE BY PASSIONS IS CONSIDERED THE WORST ONE. COMMITTING ETERNALLY [DEADLY SINS] IS THE MIDDLE. OBSTACLE BY RETRIBUTION IS THE LEAST [BAD].

Among the three obstacles, the obstacle by passions is the worst; the next is the obstacle by actions and last the obstacle by retribution. The reason is that the obstacle by passions can cause the obstacle by actions as well as the obstacle by retribution.

One may claim that the obstacle by retribution is the worst. [The other two] are the causes [for various effects]. All those causes [can still] be transformed [from obstacles to non-obstacles], but an effect, [i.e., retribution] cannot be transformed [from obstacles to non-obstacles]. This [argument] is fallacious.

One may possess [either] the obstacle by passions, the obstacle by actions or the obstacle by retribution. One may possess both the obstacle by passions and the obstacle by actions or [possess] both the obstacle by passions and the obstacle by retribution. No one possesses both the obstacle

---

209 This seems to be the viewpoint of the Sautrāntika. See MVS (Taisho, 27, 601A.2ff).
by actions and the obstacle by retribution because no one possesses both a cause, [i.e., the obstacle by actions] and its effect, [i.e., the obstacle by retribution at the same time.]

The obstacle by actions exists in the three continents,\(^{210}\) The obstacle by passions and the obstacle by retributions exist in the five destinies.

\(^{210}\) The four continents except for the North continent.
2. The Act of Destroying The Buddhist Community

Commentary (898C.18–899B.11)*

Question: As explained above, the most sinful act among the eternally deadly sins is 'destroying the Buddhist community'. What is the nature of the act of destroying the Buddhist community?

Answer:

(70a-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT THE ACT OF DESTROYING THE BUDDHIST COMMUNITY POSSESSES THE NATURE OF DESTROYING COMMUNION. IT IS THAT WHICH IS UNCONTAMINATED-INDETERMINATE AND INCLUDED IN DHARMAS DISSOCIATED FROM MIND.

[The act of] destroying the Buddhist community possesses the nature of destroying communion (asāmagri). [Its nature is that which] is uncontaminated-indeterminate and is included in the aggregate of dharmas dissociated from mind.211

[Such an unwholesome action as] telling lies [may cause] the sin of destroying the Buddhist community.

Question: What and by whom is it destroyed?

-------------------

Answer:


[The verse says], "That is, [the act is] to destroy the Buddhist community." The Buddhist community is destroyed by a member of the Buddhist community.

[The verse says], "That [person] must receive retribution [for that sin] in the Avīci-hell (avīci-naraka)\textsuperscript{212} for [the period of] a Kalpa\textsuperscript{213}." [One who commits] the sin of destroying the Buddhist community must receive retribution [for that sin] in the Avīci-hell for [the period of] a Kalpa.

If one commits the other types of bad acts, he/she will [receive] retribution in the other hells. If one has already been dwelling in the Avīci-hell since he/she committed [as bad an act as the act of] destroying the

\textsuperscript{212}In this hell, beings have to suffer most dreadful calamities and there is no pleasure at all due to most serious sins. This hell is also called 'Non-intermission hell' because there is no intermission in the suffering of the beings constantly burning in extreme heat. AK, p. 163. See also Chaudhuri, pp.124-125.

\textsuperscript{213}It is the term for the Buddhist time concept; an immeasurably long period of time. AK, p.178.1ff. See also Chaudhuri, pp. 142-144.
Buddhist community, he/she is no longer able to commit [as bad an act as the act of] destroying the Buddhist community, but is [still] able to commit other bad acts. All the [bad acts] that he/she commits are the results [of dwelling] in the Avīci-hell. For one who commits bad acts, the bigger and the more flexible body he/she has, the more pains he/she may suffer.

After committing any of the other eternally deadly sins, one is no longer able to commit [the act of] destroying the Buddhist community.

One who [is intent on] destroying the Buddhist community is always of noble descent, understands the Buddhist precepts well and is an eloquent speaker. [So, he easily captivates many members of the Buddhist community]. Then, he [tries to] portray himself as the master [of the community]. It is this type of person [that often tends to] destroy the Buddhist community. [On the other hand], one who abandons following the Buddhist precepts is neither a sacred person [nor is necessarily intent on destroying the Buddhist community].

Question: How does he/she destroy the Buddhist community?

Answer:

(72a-d) WHEN A MONK IS DECEIVED BY AN [UNTRUE] MASTER AND [HIS UNTRUE] PATH, [THE BUDDHIST COMMUNITY'S SENSE OF] COMMUNION IS
DESTROYED. HE IS A SO-CALLED SELF-RIGHTHEOUS PERSON.

[The verse says], "When a monk is deceived by an [untrue] master and [his untrue] path, [the Buddhist community's sense of] communion is destroyed." That is, a monk may think something like this: "Devadatta\textsuperscript{214} is my master, not Gautama [Buddha]. The five precepts that he (Devadatta) has established\textsuperscript{215} are the [true] path [to attaining enlightenment], not the eight sacred [paths]." It should be known that this is [an act of] destroying the Buddhist community. It is also understood that a certain number [of monks] must be enticed by this deceived monk [in order to destroy the Buddhist community].

Question: What type of person [is intent on] destroying the Buddhist community?

Answer: An extremely self-righteous person (\textit{drsticarita}). A self-righteous person [tends to be] intent on [committing] such a wrong [act as] destroying the Buddhist community. One who is receptive to others (\textit{trs\=n\={a}-carita})

\textsuperscript{214}Devadatta was a cousin of the Buddha and a follower of his teaching. But he attempted to take over the leadership of the Buddhist community and even tried to kill the Buddha. See \textit{MVS} (Taisho, 27, 601.9ff).

\textsuperscript{215}The five precepts are: a Buddhist monk must (1) wear a yellow robe (\textit{kas\={a}ya}); (2) ask for alms; (3) eat only one meal a day; (4) stay outside and (5) must not eat any meat and fish, spicy foods and milk for his entire life. \textit{MVS} (Taisho, 27, 602C.1ff).
never is, because [he/she] easily removes [his/her wrong intention as a result of other's suggestions].²¹⁶

Question: Which [type of] person destroys the Buddhist community, a lay-person or an ordained monk?

The answer is a monk. The ordained monk [is intent on] destroying the Buddhist community. Neither a lay-person, a novice nor a Buddhist nun will do this. When [the monk] is intent on destroying the Buddhist community in his mind, that is, when each one of his five senses and cognition are activated [at that very moment], his mind will bring about the effect [of destroying the Buddhist community].²¹⁷ His initial thought (vitarka) concerning destroying the Buddhist community is [understood] likewise.

Question: In what places and by how many people is the Buddhist community destroyed?

Answer:

(73a-d) IN THE THREE CONTINENTS, THE MINIMUM [NUMBER] IS EIGHT. THIS IS 'THE DESTRUCTION OF CEREMONY'.
IN THE SOUTH-CONTINENT, [THE MINIMUM NUMBER IS] NINE. THIS IS 'THE DESTRUCTION OF THE DHARMA-WHEEL'.

[The verse says], "In the three continents, the minimum [number] is eight. This is the destruction of ceremony." In

²¹⁶MVS (Taisho, 27, 602C.20ff).
²¹⁷ibid., (Taisho, 27, 603A.28ff).
the three continents, there is 'the destruction of ceremony' (karma-bheda) in the Buddhist community. [This destruction] is undertaken by at least eight [monks] because at [a minimum] the Buddhist community is composed of four [monks], never three [or less]. That is, two separate Buddhist communities hold the ordainment ceremony respectively in one district. It should be known that this is [the act of] destroying the Buddhist community.\textsuperscript{218}

Question: In which places and by how many people is 'the destruction of the dharma-wheel' undertaken?

Answer: "In the South-continent, [the minimum number is] nine. This is the destruction of the dharma-wheel (dharmacakra)." The destruction of the dharma-wheel occurs [only] in the South-continent, not anywhere else. [Only one true] path [to attaining enlightenment] exists in the [South-continent]; [the others are] wrong paths. [Only one true] master, (i.e., the Buddha) exists in the [South-continent]; [the others are] wrong masters. The minimum [number of] people [for the destruction of the dharma-wheel] is nine. That is, [one Buddhist community] is separated into two; one person organizes [one of the two] Buddhist communities and instructs [the members of] the community, and [the other people] are the followers of the

\textsuperscript{218}MVS (Taisho, 27, 602B.16ff).
community. A shameless (āhrīkya) and indecent (anapatrāpya) [person such] as Devadatta instructs the community.²¹⁹

Question: By which [type of monk] is the Buddhist community destroyed, a sacred (ārya) [monk] or an ordinary [one] (prthajana) ?

Answer: [The Buddhist community] is destroyed by ordinary [monks]. Sacred [monks] do not [attempt to destroy the Buddhist community] because [they are called] 'the group fixed in true attainment' (samyāñctvanivata)²²⁰ and possess the serenity based on trusting faith (avetya-prasāda)²²¹.

It is also explained that an ordinary [monk] who has achieved [the state of] 'patience' (ksānti) [which pertains to the Four Noble Truths]²²² does not [attempt to] destroy [the Buddhist community] because he is already set to enter [the sacred path]. Sacred monks, i.e., the [true] disciples of the World-Honored One, never destroy [the Buddhist community].

Question: On what occasion is the Buddhist community not destroyed ?

---------------------

²¹⁹ MVS (Taisho, 27, 602B.16ff).

²²⁰ A sacred monk who has already achieved the path of vision is certain to attain Nirvāṇa and is called 'the group fixed in true attainment'. See AK, p. 157.11ff.

²²¹ It is the faith in the Buddha, Dharma, the Buddhist community and the Buddhist precepts. See AK, p.387.

²²² See Griffiths, pp.212-230.
Answer:


The Buddhist community is not destroyed on the following six occasions: (1) [at the time when a] district [of the community (sīmābandhu)] is not yet established. The district [of the community] has been explained previously; (2) [the Buddhist community] is not [destroyed at the moment when the Buddha] attains enlightenment; (3) [the Buddhist community] is not [destroyed at the moment when the Buddha] dies. The Buddhist community will be united on these two occasions; (4) [the Buddhist community] is not [destroyed during a certain period] after a master (Buddha) has died because another master [for the community] will not yet have appeared [during that period]; (5) when 'tumours' (arbuda), i.e., wrong precepts or wrong views, have not yet broken out [in the Buddhist community] and (6) [the Buddhist community] is not [destroyed at the time when] the two great

---

223 See translation part, p. 190.
[disciples of the Buddha]\(^{224}\) have not yet appeared. If the Buddhist community is destroyed [after the two great disciples have appeared], the two great [disciples] will re-organize [the community] within a day. [Therefore], the destruction of the Buddhist community will not last more than one day.

One may claim that the Buddhist community is destroyed on seven occasions. [On another occasion, i.e., at the time when] the master (Buddha) appears in the community, no one [can attempt to destroy the Buddhist community] because of his authority.

All Buddhas will not always experience the destruction of the Buddhist community. [The present Buddha has experienced the destruction of the Buddhist community] because [the destruction has been realised as the effect of] his [past] actions.

\(^{224}\) The two great disciples of the Buddha are: Śāriputra and Maudgalyāyana.
3. The Worst Action and The Finest Action

AH (815A.28-B.5)

Question: What is the worst action among other actions?

Answer:

(32a-b) SUCH AN ACTION AS DESTROYING THE BUDDHIST COMMUNITY IS CONSIDERED THE WORST [ACTION AMONG OTHERS].

Such an action as destroying the Buddhist community is the worst action among others. [One who commits this act must receive the punishment of] dwelling in the Avīci-hell for [the period of] a Kalpa.

Question: What is the finest action among others?

Answer:

(32c-d) IT SHOULD BE KNOWN THAT ONE'S VOLITION IN THE HIGHEST STAGE OF EXISTENCE [BRINGS ABOUT] THE GREATEST [EFFECT].

The stage of 'neither conceptualization nor non-conceptualization' (naivasamjñāna-asamjñāna-āyatana)\(^\text{225}\) is the highest [stage among the realms of existence]. One's volition in that stage [generates] the finest [action] and

\(^{225}\)The final stage in the realm of formlessness. See AK, p. 112; p.434.
[brings about] the greatest effect. The retribution [for attaining that stage] is a life-span of eighty thousand Kalpas.
Commentary (899B.11-C.6)

Question: What is the worst action among the five [types of] eternally deadly sins?

Answer:

(75a-d) [THE ACT OF] DESTROYING THE BUDDHIST COMMUNITY BY TELLING LIES IS THE WORST AMONG OTHER ACTIONS. ONE'S VOLITION IN THE HIGHEST STAGE OF EXISTENCE IS CONSIDERED [TO BRING ABOUT] THE GREATEST EFFECT.

[The verse says], "[The act of] destroying the Buddhist community by telling lies is the worst among other actions." [The act of] telling lies [which causes] the destruction of the Buddhist community is considered the worst [action]. Various doctrine (dharma kāya) which the Buddha considers [most valuable] may be extensively misinterpreted and misunderstood due to the destruction of the Buddhist community]. So, [this act of] destroying the Buddhist community leaves the masses [in a state of] confusion.

If the Buddhist community is destroyed, one who has not yet attained the sacred state will neither be able to seek nor be able to attain that state. Neither would [such Buddhist] practices as meditation, studying [Buddhist doctrine] and contemplating [the truth] exist nor would the wheel of dharma turn in the great thousands of worlds.

If the Buddhist community is re-organized, one who has not yet attained the sacred state will able to attain that
state, to free oneself from desire and to eradicate contaminated [dharmas] as the result [of such practices]. [Such Buddhist] practices as meditation, studying [Buddhist doctrine] and contemplating [the truth] would exist and the wheel of dharma would turn in the great thousands of worlds.

Question: Telling lies is considered the most sinful act here. But, in some other places, one's mind-action or wrong-view is considered [the most sinful act]. What is the difference between these sinful acts?

Answer: Telling lies is considered the most [sinful act] among the five [types of] eternally deadly sins; mind-action is considered the most [sinful act] among the three [types of] actions and wrong-view is considered the most [sinful act] among the five [types of] wrong-views.²²⁶

Also, telling lies is considered the most sinful [act] because its effect is widespread; mind-action is the most sinful [act] because it leaves the masses [in a state of] confusion and wrong-view is the most sinful [act] because it eradicates the wholesome roots.

Question: What type of action brings about the greatest

---

²²⁶The five types of wrong-view are: (1) the wrong-view that there exists an individual person (satkāyadrṣṭi); (2) the wrong-view which grasps extremes (antaragrāhadrṣṭi); (3) wrong-view per se (mithyādrṣṭi); (4) clinging to wrong-view (dṛṣṭiparāmarṣa) and clinging to morality and religious vows (śīlavrataparāmarṣa). AK, p.281.20ff. See also Griffiths, pp. 274-275.
effect?

Answer: [The verse says], "One's volition in the highest stage of existence is considered [to bring about] the greatest effect." One's volition in 'the stage of neither conceptualization nor non-conceptualization' (naivasaṃjñāna-asamjñāna-āyatana) [brings about] its maturation-effect which is a life-span of eighty thousand Kalpas. As for its emancipated-effect, one's volition accompanied by the 'diamond meditation' (vairopama-samādhi)²²⁷ [brings about] the greatest [effect]. That volition eradicates passions eternally and [enables one to attain Arhatship] as the result [of practice].

It is also explained that a seed of volition will in turn develop into various volitions for [the period of] eighty thousand Kalpas. This is just as a painter first drafts with one colour and then adds other colours.

It is also explained that a certain act or a certain condition in the present moment occurs based on various volitions. [As retribution for these various] volitions, a life-span of ten thousand Kalpas, thirty-thousand Kalpas or forty-thousand Kalpas is realized. These are called 'the group of great Kalpas (mahākalpa)'.²²⁸

²²⁷This is a particular type of meditation by which the final type of passion is abandoned. See AK, 364.19ff).

²²⁸It is regarded as the largest unit of calculation of time (AK, p. 178). See also Chaudhuri, pp.142-143.
BIBLIOGRAPHY

PRIMARY SOURCES

1. Pāli & Sanskrit Sources


Karmasiddhiprakarana, (Extant only in Tibetan and Chinese.) Tibetan text edited by by Etienne Lamotte as part of 'Le Traité de L'Acte de Vasubandhu', (MéB, 4. 1935--6, pp.151-263); Chinese, Taisho #1609.


2. Chinese Sources

An asterisk '*:' indicates a Sanskrit reconstruction in cases where only the Chinese translation survives.

*Abhidharmāmṛтарasaśāstra 阿毘昙甘露味論 (大正新修大藏経、#1553)

*Abhidharmāvatārasāstra 入阿毘達磨論 (大正新修大藏経、#1554)

*Abhidharmahṛdaya(śāstra) 阿毘達心論 (大正新修大藏経、#1550)

*Abhidharmahṛdayasūtra 阿毘達心論経 (大正新修大藏経、#1551)

*Abhidharmajñānaprasthānasāstra 阿毘達磨破智論 (大正新修大藏経、#1544)

Abhidharmakośabhāṣya 真諦訳 阿毘達磨俱合釋論 (大正新修大藏経、#1559)

玄奘訳 阿毘達磨俱合論 (大正新修大藏経、#1558)

*Abhidharmamahāvibhāṣāsāstra 阿毘達磨大毘婆沙論 (大正新修大藏経、#1545)

*Abhidharmavyāyāmasarasāstra 阿毘達磨順正理論 (大正新修大藏経、#1562)

*Abhidharmavyābhisāstrasāstra 阿毘達磨毘婆沙論 (大正新修大藏経、#1565)

Chu-she-lun-chi 俱合論記 (大正新修大藏経、#1821)

Chu-she-lun-shu 俱合論疏 (大正新修大藏経、#1822)

Ch’u-san-tsang-chi-chi 出三藏記集 (大正新修大藏経、#2145)
Dharmaskandha 阿毘達磨法蘊足論 (大正新修大藏経、#1537)

Dhātukāya 阿毘達磨界身足論 (大正新修大藏経、#1540)

(DIRGHAGAMA 長阿含経 (大正新修大藏経、#1)

Ekottaraagama 增一阿含経 (大正新修大藏経、#125)

Hsu-kao-seng-chuan 継高僧伝 (大正新修大藏経、#2060)

K'ai-yuan-shih-chiao-lu 開元釋經錄 (大正新修大藏経、#2154)

Kao-seng-chuan 高僧伝 (大正新修大藏経、#2059)

*Karmasiddhiparakarana 大乘成業論 (大正新修大藏経、#1609)

Madhyāgama 中阿含経 (大正新修大藏経、#26)

*Misrakabhidharmahradyaśāstra 雜阿毘昙心論 (大正新修大藏経、#1552)

P'ou-sou-p'an-tou-fa-shih-chuan 婆數槃豆法師伝 (大正新修大藏経、#2049)

Prajñaptiśāstra 施設論 (大正新修大藏経、#1538)

Prakaranapāda 阿毘達磨品類足論 (大正新修大藏経、#1542)

Sawyuktâgama 雜阿含経 (大正新修大藏経、#99)

別説雜阿含経 (大正新修大藏経、#100)
*Śāṅgītīpatīyāya 阿毘達磨集異門足論 （大正新脩大藏經、#1530）

Ta-t'ang-hsi-yü-chi 大唐西域記 （大正新脩大藏經、#2087）

*Vījñānakāya 阿毘達磨識身足論 （大正新脩大藏經、#1539）
SECONDARY SOURCES

1. Sources in Western Languages


Banerjee, A.C., Sarvastivada Literature, (Calcutta, 1957).


---. Tantric Concept of Bodhicitta: A Buddhist Experiential Philosophy, (Madison, University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1982).


Poussin, Louis de La Vallée. L'Abhidhamakośa de Vasubandhu, 6 vols.,


Verdu, Alfonso, Early Buddhist Philosophy, (Delhi: Motolal Banarsidass, 1985).


2. Sources in Japanese

Akanuma, Chizen 赤沼智善
『仏教教理の研究』 (京都：法蔵館、1981)
"業の研究" 『赤沼智善論文集』 2 (名古屋：
破塵閣、1939)
『印度仏教国名詞辞典』 (京都：法蔵館、1967)
『漢巴四部四阿含互照録』 (名古屋：1923)

Fukuhara, Ryogon 福原亮厳
『有部阿毘達磨論の発達』 (京都：永田文昌堂、1965)
『業論』 (京都：永田文昌堂、1982)

Funahashi, Issai 舟橋一哉
『阿毘達磨集論業品要義』 (京都：東本願寺、1956)
『業の研究』 (京都：法蔵館、1954)
『業思想序説』 (京都：法蔵館、1956)

Goshiso no kenkyu 『業思想の研究』 大谷大学編 (京都：文栄堂、1975)

Katumata, Shunko 勝又俊教
『仏教に於ける心識の研究』 (東京：山喜房、1974)

Kawamura, Kosshe 河村孝照
『阿毘達磨論書の資料的研究』 (東京：学術振興会、
1974)

Kimura, Taiken 木村泰賢
"阿毘達磨論の研究" 『木村泰賢全集』 第五巻 (東京：
大法輪閣、1968)
"業と輪廻" 『木村泰賢全集』 第三巻 (東京：
大法輪閣、1968)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>作者</th>
<th>书名</th>
<th>出版信息</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kudara, Kogi</td>
<td>百済康義</td>
<td>&quot;ウイグル訳阿毘達磨論書に見る論師・論書の &quot;梵名&quot; 『印度学仏教学研究』31-1, 1982.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mochizuki, Shinryo</td>
<td>望月信了</td>
<td>仏書解説大辞典』（東京：大東出版、1960-63）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sakurabe, Hajime</td>
<td>櫻部 建</td>
<td>『倉倵論の研究』（京都：法蔵館、1971）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>『仏教の思想 2 番存在の分析』 上山秀平共著 （東京：角川書店、1983）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sasaki, Genjun H.</td>
<td>佐々木現順</td>
<td>『阿毘達磨思想研究』（東京：弘文堂、1958）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>『仏教に於ける時間論の研究』 （東京：清水弘文堂、1974）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>『業と運命』 （東京：清水弘文堂、1978）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>『業の思想』 （東京：第三文明社、1980）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;業論の本質&quot; 仏教学セミナー』20, 1974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satou, Mituo</td>
<td>佐藤秘雄</td>
<td>『大乗仏教思想論』仏業講座4-1 （東京：大蔵出版、1978）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shizutani, Masao</td>
<td>静谷政雄</td>
<td>『小乗仏教史の研究』 （京都：百華苑、1978）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ui, Hakuju</td>
<td>字井伯寿</td>
<td>『印度哲学研究』第2巻 （東京：1926）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamada, Ryujo</td>
<td>山田竜城</td>
<td>『大乗仏教成立論序説』 （京都：平楽寺書店、1959）</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamaguchi, Susumu</td>
<td>山口 益</td>
<td>『世親の成業論』 （京都：法蔵館、1951）</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Yoshimoto, Shingyo 吉元信行
『アビダルマ思想』（京都：法蔵館、1982）

Watanabe, Umeo et al
渡辺徳男・水野弘元・大石秀典
『国詰一切経』・毘彌部・20，21
（東京：大東出版、1977，改訂版）
APPENDIX

1. Glossary of Chinese and Japanese Terms 373-375
2. Glossary of Sanskrit Abhidharma Terms 376-389
3. Charts 390-395
4. Comparative Chinese Text of *Abhidharmahrdaya* 396-449
APPENDIX I: GLOSSARY OF CHINESE AND JAPANESE TERMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Name/Phrase</th>
<th>Chinese Name/Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Takakusu, Junjiro</td>
<td>高橋俊次郎</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Kimura, Taiken</td>
<td>木村泰賢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Hsuan-Tsang</td>
<td>玄奘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sakurabe, Hajime</td>
<td>櫻部建</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Fa-shen</td>
<td>法勝</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Akanuma, Chizen</td>
<td>赤沼智善</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ta-mo-shih-li-ti</td>
<td>達磨石梨帝</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>T’an-mo-shih-li</td>
<td>疑磨戶梨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ch’u yao Ching</td>
<td>出曜経</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>sheng</td>
<td>勝</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>San Lun Hsuan I</td>
<td>三論玄義</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Chi-tsang</td>
<td>古藏</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
p. 20, l. 1 Pu-kuang  普光

p. 20, l. 1 Chu-she Lun chi  俱舍論記

1. 16 Ui, Hakuju  宇井伯舜

p. 21, l. 7 Tao-yen  道根

p. 22, l. 10 Yamada, Ryujo  山田竜城

1. 16 Katumata, Shunkyo  勝又俊教

1. 19 Fukuhara, Ryogon  福原亮厳

p. 23, l. 5 Kao-seng Chuan  高僧伝

p. 25, l. 10 A-p’i-t’an hsin lun  阿毘昙心論

1. 15 Kudara, Kogi  松浦康義

p. 26, l. 7 chuan  巻

1. 9 Tao-an  道安

Ch’ang-an  長安

1. 12 Mt. Lu  處山
p. 26, 1. 12 Hui-yuan  

1. 13 Taisho shinshu daizokyo  

p. 27, 1. 19 Fa-chih  

p. 28, 1. 4 A-p’i-t’an Hsin Lun Ching  

p. 30, 1. 3 Ts’ai A-p’i-t’an Hsin Lun  

1. 7 P’i-t’an Tsung  

1. 12 Chu-she Tsung  

p. 49, 1. 18 Sasaki, Genjun  

p. 88, 1. 9 ch’u-chung
APPENDIX TWO

GLOSSARY OF SANSKRIT ABHIDHARMA TERMS

This glossary provides definitions of Abhidharma technical terms employed in this study. It is limited to doctrinal terms, not terms designating places, personalities, deities, texts and so on. They are listed by English alphabetical order.

*abhidharma*  
It indicates one of the three bodies of Buddhist teaching (*Tripiṭaka*: Sūtra, Vinaya and Abhidharma). It deals with a type of Buddhist philosophy concerned with the analysis and classification of all existents or dhammas. Often translated as 'Metaphysics'.

*adhipati-phala*  
'Dominant effect'. It is one of the five types of effects.

*ākāśa*  
'Space'. It is one of the three 'unconditioned' (asamskṛta) dhammas or eternal factors. See asamskṛta.

*aklista*  
'Undefiled'; undefiled by passions (kleśa).

*akopya-ceto-vimukta*  
See samaya-vimukta.

*akuśala*  
'Unwholesome'.

*ālambana*  
'Objective support'.

*anāgāmin*  
'Never-returner'. A sacred individual who never returns to the realm of desire (kāma-dhātu).
anāgamya  See sāmantaka-dhyāna.

ānantarya-karma
'Eternally, deadly sin'. The five types of eternally deadly sins are enumerated as: (1) killing one's own father; (2) killing one's own mother; (3) killing an arhat; (4) destroying the Buddhist community and (5) causing the Buddha's body to bleed.

ānantarya-mārga
See prayoga-mārga.

anāsṛava
'Uncontaminated'.

anāsṛava-samvara
See samvara.

anidarśana
'Unvisible'.

anivṛta
'Unconcealed'; unconcealed by passions (kleśa). It indicates that which is morally indeterminate but is not associated with passions.

antagrāha-drṣti
'The wrong view which grasps extremes'. See mithyā-drṣti.

antarā-bhava
The interval between one's death and next life.

anuśaya
'Proclivity'.

anutpāda-jñāna
'The knowledge of non-arising'. It is an arhat's knowledge that he has already realized the Four Noble Truths and nothing is left for him to understand.
**anuvartaka**  See *hetu-samutthāna*.

**apratisamkhā-nirodha**  See *asamskrta*.

**apratisamkhā-nirodha**  That which is not effected when it is acted upon by something else. It describes the characteristic of 'unmanifested (avjñāpti) action'.

**arhat**  A sacred monk who has achieved the highest stage of the path, 'the path of non-learning' (aśaiksa) prior to attaining perfect emancipation (nirvāṇa).

**ārya**  'Sacred' or 'noble'.

**ārūpya-dhātu**  'The realm of formlessness'. One of the Buddhist cosmological realms. It is a realm which there is no material element and is closely connected with the Buddhist meditative practices.

**aśaiksa**  See *arhat*.

**asamskrta**  'Unconditioned'. Eternal factors which exist beyond any causal relationships. Three items are enumerated: (1) space (ākāśa); (2) cessation through realization (pratisamkhā-nirodha) and (3) cessation not through realization (apratisamkhā-nirodha).

**asamavāra**  The potential to perform unwholesome actions, which is acquired through habitually performing unwholesome actions.

**āśraya**  'Support'; basis of existence.

**audārika**  'Gross'. It indicates that which is apprehensible by the five sense-organs.
avidyā 'Ignorance'. It indicates the state in which one has not yet come to realize the truth.

avijñāpti 'Unmanifested'. It indicates an unseen, residual element which effects the performance of future actions. It is included in the category of material (rūpa).

avyākṛta 'Indeterminate'; morally unqualified.

bhaṭṭika-rūpa The derivative matters from the four great elements (mahā-bhūta); common materials.

bhavāgra See naivasaṃjñānāśaṃjñā-āyatana.

bhāvanā-mārga 'The path of cultivation'. The Buddhist practice acquired after achieving 'the path of vision' (darśana-mārga), which requires the constant cultivation.

bhikṣu 'A Buddhist monk'.

bhikṣuni 'A Buddhist nun'.

bodhisattva One who makes vows to attain enlightenment and save suffering beings, and who has been practicing for a long period of time.

caitta 'Mental state'.

cakṣur-vijñāna 'Eye-consciousness'.

cetanā 'Volition'. It is regarded as mind-action which generates body and speech-actions.

citta 'Mind'.
cittānuparvarttin
That which is associated with one's mind.

cittaviprayukta-samskāra-dharma
'Dharma dissociated from the mind'.

darśana-mārga 'The path of vision'. The Buddhist practice by which one perceives the Four Noble Truths. One who enters this state is called a sacred (ārya) individual.

dharma
(1) Law, truth; (2) the Buddha's teaching; (3) an object of thought and (4) an element or thing. In Abhidharma texts, dharma specifically indicates an irreducible constituent of the phenomenal world.

dharma-āyatana-rūpa
Material which is perceived only through cognition. It describes the characteristic of 'unmanifested (avijñapti) action'.

dhātu
'Realm'.

dhyāna
'Meditation'.

dhyānāntara
'Intermediate meditation'. It is a special meditative state between the first meditation and the second liminal meditation (sāmantaka-dhyāna).

dhyāna-sāmvara
See sāmvara.

dravya
'Entity'.

dṛṣṭi-parāmarṣa
'Clinging to wrong view'. See mithyādrsti.
drṣṭi-prāpta 'Having the view of truth'. A noble individual who achieves the state in which the truth is perceived. It also indicates the state in which a keen individual enters the path of cultivation (bhāvana-mārga) and he/she eradicates passions. A stolid one, on the other hand, achieves that state by having true faith and an understanding of the truth (śraddhādhimukta).

duḥkha 'Suffering'.

duḥkhe-dharmajñāna-ksānti 'The patience to understand the doctrine of suffering'. The initial stage of the path of vision (darśana-mārga) which pertains to the Four Noble Truths in the realm of desire (kāma-dhātu). Then one can attain the next stage called 'the knowledge of the doctrine of suffering' (duḥkhe-dharmajñāna).

hetu 'Cause'.

anuvartaka See hetu-samutthāna.

hetu-samutthāna The purely mental activity in which one is about to carry out an action. That is, one's mind and mental states generate (pravartaka) actions. Then, he/she actually carries out the action. At that moment, his/her mind and mental states occur with (anuvartaka) the action momentarily. This state is called kṣaṇa-samutthāna.

jñāna 'Wisdom'; 'knowledge'.

kāma-dhātu 'The realm of desire'. This is one of the three Buddhist cosmological realms. Beings of this realm are characterized by desires for sensual pleasures and the things of the world.
kāraṇa-hetu  'Efficient cause'. It is one of the six types of causes.

karmapatha  'The course of action'. See maula-karmapatha.

karmavāraṇa  'Obstacle by actions'. Five types of eternally deadly sins are the obstacle for one to attain the sacred path. See ānantarya-karma.

kleśa  'Passion'.

kleśāvarāṇa  'Obstacle by passions'. Constantly arising passions are the obstacle for one to attain the sacred path.

kliśta  'Defiled'; defiled by passions (kleśa).

ksana-samutthāna  See hetu-samutthāna.

ksaya-jñāna  'The knowledge of destruction'. It is an arhat's knowledge that he has completely realized the Four Noble truths.

kusāla  'Wholesome'.

lakṣaṇa  'Mark' or 'defining characteristic'. Each dharma has its own defining characteristic that sets it off from all other dharmas.

mahābhūta  'Great element'. There are four great elements: (1) earth (prthvī); (2) water (ap); (3) fire (agni) and (4) air (vāyu). Earth represents solidity (khara); water represents moisture (sneha); fire represents heat (usnatā) and air represents mobility (Irana). These four great elements compose all other material forms (rūpa).
marana-bhava 'Moment of dying'.

maula-karmapatha

'Action itself'. An action is classified into three stages: (1) the state of preparation for carrying out an action (pravasa); (2) an action itself and (3) the result after carrying out an action (prsthā).

mithyā-dṛṣṭi 'Wrong view'. Five types of wrong view are enumerated as the following human proclivities: (1) the wrong view that there exists an individual person and something exists which belongs to that person (satkāya-dṛṣṭi); (2) 'the wrong view which grasps extremes' (antagrāha-dṛṣṭi); (3) 'the wrong view per se' (mithyā-dṛṣṭi); (4) 'clinging to wrong view' (dṛṣṭi-parāmarśa) and (5) 'clinging to wrong morality and religious vows' (śilavrata-parāmarśa).

naivasamjñānāsammāñā-āvatana

'Neither conceptual nor non-conceptual' state of mind. The highest level of the realm of formlessness (ārūpya-dhātu).

naiva-samvara-nāsamvara

'Intermediate state'. Unseen latent power which is acquired through neither wholesome actions nor habitually unwholesome actions.

nirvāṇa 'Emancipation'; 'release from the world of transmigration (samsāra)'. The final goal of emancipation for Buddhists.

nīsyānā-phala

'Down-flow effect'. It is one of the five types of effects.

nivṛtta 'Concealed'; concealed by passions (kleśa).
paramārtha 'Absolute' or 'ultimate'. Buddhism establishes the two types of truth: (1) 'Absolute Truth' or ultimate reality (paramārtha-satya) and (2) 'Conventional Truth' or reality in the worldly sense (saṃvṛti-satya).

paryavasthāna Extremely unwholesome, passionate desire.

phala 'Effect'.

prajñā 'Wisdom'.

prāpti 'Acquisition'; the force of acquisition. It is a dharma which is included in 'dharmas dissociated from the mind' (citta-viprayukta-samskāra-dharma).

prātimokṣa-samvara See samvara.

pratipakṣa 'Opposite'; restraint.

pratisamkhā-niruddha See asamkrta.

pratītyasamutpāda 'Dependent co-arising'; the Buddhist concept of causal relationships.

pratyaya 'Necessary precondition'.

pratyekabuddha One who has realized enlightenment entirely by his own effort, without a Buddha's teaching.

pravartaka See hetu-samutthāna.

pravṛgya See maula-karmapatha.
prayoga-mārga 'The path of application'. There are four stages in the process of abandoning passions and realizing the truth: (1) the path of application: the state of preparatory practices for abandoning passions; (2) the path of immediate succession (ānantarya-mārga): the state of abandoning passions; (3) this state is immediately succeeded by the next state called 'the path of liberation' (vimukti-mārga): the state of completely abandoning passions and realizing the truth and (4) the final state is called 'the path of attainment' (višeṣa-mārga): the state of attaining emancipation and willingly abandoning other passions.

prṣṭha See maula-karmapatha.

purusakāra-phala 'Effort effect'. It is one of the five types of effects.

pūrvkāla-bhava 'Lifetime'; the period from one's birth to one's death.

rūpa 'Form'; 'material form'.

rūpa-dhātu 'The realm of form'. A realm or realms closely connected with Buddhist meditative practices. These meditative practices are concerned with emptying human desire.

sabhāga-hetu 'Homogeneous cause'. It is one of the six types of causes.

sahabhū-hetu 'Mutual cause'. It is one of the six types of causes.

śaikṣa A novice or beginner in the practice of the path.
sakrdāgāmin 'Once-returner'. The one who will possibly return to the realm of desire once before becoming an 'never-returner' (anāgāmin).

samādhi 'Concentration'.

sāmantaka-dhyāna 'Liminal meditation'. The Sarvāstivāda establishes the four types of meditation in the realm of form (rūpa-dhātu). There is a liminal meditation for each of the four types of meditation. The liminal meditation for the first meditation of the realm of form is especially called 'anāgamyā'.

samaya-vimukta 'Having a temporary emancipation'. An arhat who achieves the concentration of the mind and eradicates passions on a specific occasion. An arhat who has achieved the final stage of emancipation never falls from this state, and is called 'Having a fixed emancipation' (akopya-ceto-vimukta).

samgha 'The Buddhist community'.

samprayukta-hetu 'Conjunction cause'. It is one of the six types of causes.

sāmśkāra 'Formation'; various conditioned states. It is one of the five aggregates (skandha).

samskṛta 'Conditioned'.

samsāra 'Transmigration'; the cyclic world of birth and death. It describes the state of unenlightened beings.

samutthāna The process of evolution of one's action.
| **samvara**   | The potential to perform wholesome actions. This unseen element (avijñāpti) is acquired through faithfully following the Buddhist precepts (prātimokṣa-samvara), meditation (dhyāna-samvara) and attaining the uncontaminated state (anāsrava-samvara). |
| **samvrti**   | 'Secular' or 'conventional'. See also paramārtha. |
| **sanidārśana** | 'Visible'. |
| **sapratiṅga** | That which is effected when it is acted upon by something else. One of the factors which define something material (rūpa). |
| **sārvaragha-hetu** | 'All-pervading cause'. It is one of the six types of causes. |
| **sāsrava**   | 'Contaminated'. |
| **satkāya-drstī** | 'The wrong view that there exists an individual person'. See mithyā-drstī. |
| **śikṣaṁānaṇa** | An apprentice nun, between 18 and 20 years of age, who receives pre-ordination training consisting of the six precepts. |
| **śilavrata-parāmarśa** | 'Clinging to wrong morality and religious vows'. See mithyā-drstī. |
| **śīmābandha** | 'Magic boundary'. In the Buddhist community, this designated region is prepared for the performance of a ritual or ceremony. |
| **skandha**   | 'Aggregate'. |
śraddhādhimukta
See dṛṣṭi-prāpta.

śrāmanera
A male, Buddhist novice.

śrāmanerika
A female, Buddhist novice.

śrāvaka
A disciple of the Buddha.

srotāpanna
'Stream-winner'. A sacred monk who has entered the path of cultivation (bhāvanī-mārga).

sukha
'Pleasant'.

sūkṣma
'Subtle'. It indicates that which is not apprehensible by the five sense-organs.

svabhāva
'Essential nature'.

upapatti-bhava
'The state of embryo'.

upāsaka
A faithful layman.

upasampadā
'Buddhist ordination ceremony'. A ceremony in which an initiate accepts the Buddhist precepts.

upāsikā
A faithful lay-woman.

upavāsa or uposadha
A Buddhist purificatory rite at which precepts are read out and any transgressions are repented. Buddhist laymen also take upon themselves for one day the special eight types of precepts.
upeksa-sambodhyaṅga
'Abandoning' or withdrawing one's thoughts from external objects, thereby keeping his/her mind balanced. This is one of so-called 'Seven meditative practices for attaining enlightenment' (sapta bodhy-aṅgāni).

vicāra
'Investigation'. A function of the mind.

vijñapti
'Manifested'.

vijñāna
'Cognition'.

vimukti-mārga See prayoga-mārga.

vipāka-hetu
'Maturation cause'. This is one of the six types of causes.

vipākāvarana 'Obstacle by retribution'. The following three types of retribution are obstacles to attaining the sacred path: (1) being born in the state of hell, hungry ghost and animal; (2) being born in the North-continent (uttarakuru) and (3) being in the unconscious state which is attained in the fourth meditation in the realm of formlessness (samjñin-deva).

visamyoga-phala
'Emancipation effect'. It is one of the five types of effects.

viśeṣa-mārga See prayoga-mārga.

vitarka
'Reflection'. A function of the mind.
APPENDIX THREE

CHARTS
CHART I: HISTORY OF SARVĀSTIVĀDA ABHIDHARMA WORKS

*Bāṅgālaśāstra (阿毘達磨集異門足論)
*Bhāmāśāstra (阿毘達磨法論足論)

*Bhāmāśāstra (阿毘達磨論身足論)
*Vīrūkṣaśāstra (阿毘達磨界身足論)

*Bhāmāśāstra (阿毘達磨品論足論)

B.C.100

*Jñānaprastāna (阿毘達磨發智論)

*Aryavasumitrabodhīsaṃghītiśāstra (尊婆須密菩薩所集論)

A.D.100

*Bhāmāśāstra (阿毘毘婆沙論)
*Mahābhāmaśāstra (阿毘毘婆沙論)

*Abhidharmahādaya
(阿毘毘心論)

*Abhidharmahādayasūtra
(阿毘毘心論経)

Abhidharmahādaya
(阿毘毘心論)

*Abhidharmamārtasastra
(Arthadārmaśāstra (阿毘毘甘露味論)

300

Abhidharmaśāstra (阿毘毘常說論)

*Abhidharmamahāyānusāra
(阿毘毘義論足正理論)

450

Abhidharmaśāstra (阿毘毘常說論)

* indicates a text which is extant only in Chinese translation.

See Hajime Sakurabe (桝部 建), Kusharon no kenkyu 俱合論の研究 (京都: 法藏館、1968), pp.41-61.
CHART 2: FIVE CATEGORIES OF 75 DHARMAS

5 sense organs

form (11) (rūpa)

5 sense objects (unmanifested form)
(unavijñapti-rūpa)

conditioned (72) (samskṛta)

mind (1) (citta)

mental states (46) (caitta)

75 dharmas

dharmas dissociated from the mind (14)
(cittaviprayuktasamskāradharma)

unconditioned (3) (asamskṛta)

space (ākāśa)

cessation through realization (pratisamkhyañirodha)

cessation not through realization (apratisamkhyañirodha)
CHART 3: FIVE AGGREGATES AND SENSE BASES

5 aggregates
(skandha)

18 components
(dhātu)

form

5 sense organs
mind
5 sense objects

feeling
(vedanā)

idea
(samjñā)

unmanifested
form

mental
states

formation
(samskāra)

not associated
with the mind
dissociated
from the mind
unconditioned
dharma-sphere

associated with
the mind

unconditioned

uncognition
through 5 sense
organs and
consciousness

cognition
(vijñāna)
CHART 4: 6 CAUSES, 4 NECESSARY PRECONDITIONS & 5 EFFECTS

6 causes
(hetu)

Efficient cause
(kāraṇa-hetu)

Mutual cause
(sahabhū-hetu)

Conjunction cause
(samprayukta-hetu)

Homogeneous cause
(sabhāga-hetu)

All-pervading cause
(sarvatraga-hetu)

Maturation cause
(vipāka-hetu)

5 effects
(phala)

Dominant effect
(adhipati-phala)

Effort effect
(puruṣakāra-phala)

Down-flow effect
(nīṣyanda-phala)

Maturation effect
(vipāka-phala)

Emancipation effect
(visamyoga-phala)

4 necessary preconditions
(pratyaya)

Dominant condition
(adhipati-pratyaya)

Contiguous condition
(samanantra-pratyaya)

Supporting condition
(ālambana-pratyaya)

Primary condition
(hetu-pratyaya)

5 effects

Dominant effect

Effort effect

Down-flow effect

Maturation effect

Emancipation effect
6 causes

Efficient cause
- Supporting condition
- Contiguous condition
- Dominant condition

Mutual cause
Conjunction cause
Homogeneous cause
All-pervading cause
Maturation cause

4 necessary preconditions

Primary condition
APPENDIX FOUR

THE COMPARATIVE CHINESE TEXTS OF THE ABHIDHARMAHDRDAYA

Introduction

This appendix contains the Chinese texts (kārikā and bhāṣya) of the Karma-varga, Abhidharmahṛdaya (AH). III; Abhidharmahṛdayasūtra (AHS). III; and Miśraka-abhidharmahṛdaya-śāstra (MAS). III. The three texts presented here are based upon the editions found in the Taisho Shinshu Daizokyo, vol. 28.

This appendix is meant to indicate my understanding of these three texts and is also presented here primarily as the basic 'evidence' for my translations of the AH. III and the MAS. III in Part Two of this study. Another important purpose is to give an informative outline of the Buddhist concept of Karma to Buddhologists as well as Sinologists.

I have compiled these three texts, dividing them into sections and paragraphs, in order that one may compare their doctrinal contents. The text in the upper column is the AH; the AHS is in the middle and the MAS is at the bottom. The numbers in brackets refer to the pages, column and lines cited from the Taisho shinshu daizokyo, vol. 28. In the compilation of the texts, the blanks indicate that parallel passages are not found in the work. This occurs
because of the development of Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma literature, from the AH of Dharmaśri through the AHS of Upaśānta to the MAS of Dharmatrāta.
I. Introduction to Karma

1. General Information on Karma

...
2. Threefold Division of Action
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(886.13-0.2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(870.3-1.2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 3. Manifested Action and Unmanifested Action |

- 400 -
1. Wholesome, Unwholesome and Indeterminate

II. Various Aspects of Action
2. Actions and the Realms of Existence

(840b.7-8a.3)

(831a.2-21)

"..."
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. Pratyahara-Samvara, Dyana-Samvara and Anahata-Samvara</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| 3. The Potential to Perform Wholesome Actions |

(880.15-880.24)
### 1. PratImoka-Sasvarat 2. Manifested Action

#### III. Possession and The Three Time Periods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>896.17-28</td>
<td>[Relevant content]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>840.6-18</td>
<td>[Relevant content]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>814.22-28</td>
<td>[Relevant content]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### C. The Acquisition of Potential

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>840.21-25</td>
<td>[Relevant content]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### (840.18-841.10)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>隐藏列</th>
<th>第一列</th>
<th>第二列</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>隐藏行</td>
<td>第一行</td>
<td>第二行</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (834.28-8.14)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>隐藏列</th>
<th>第一列</th>
<th>第二列</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>隐藏行</td>
<td>第一行</td>
<td>第二行</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B139.2S-24)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(B139.25-31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>呈现症状</td>
<td>发热，咳嗽，乏力，头痛，肌肉痛，味</td>
<td>呈现症状</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1症状</td>
<td>病，味觉减退，身体不适</td>
<td>2症状</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3症状</td>
<td>疲劳</td>
<td>4症状</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(890.11-21)</th>
<th></th>
<th>(841.11-17)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>呈现症状</td>
<td>发热，咳嗽，乏力，头痛，肌肉痛，味</td>
<td>呈现症状</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1症状</td>
<td>病，味觉减退，身体不适</td>
<td>2症状</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3症状</td>
<td>疲劳</td>
<td>4症状</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **A. Devarra-Devanar**
| 6. Unwholesome Potential | 5. Unwholesome Actions |

| (890a.2-9) | (841a.20-28) | (813c.11) |

<p>| | | |
|  |  |  |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8130.26-26</th>
<th>7. Intermediate State</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8418.29-B.19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8904.10-22</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8130.22-21</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. The Wholesome Potential and the Unwholesome Potential

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(890A.4-12)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(890A.2-3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(840B.20-29)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Effective Period of Potentials
(890C-18-891B.16)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B. Dhāraṇa-Samāra and Anjāra-Samāra</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The Three Root-causes of Unwholesome Action</td>
<td>1. Ten Courses of Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(892D. 25-893A. 3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. The Three Root-causes of Unwholesome Action</th>
<th>1. Ten Courses of Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The Three Root-causes of Unwholesome Action</td>
<td>1. Ten Courses of Action</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. The Three Root-causes of Unwholesome Action</th>
<th>1. Ten Courses of Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
A. The Three Unwholesome Courses of Body-action

(842A.14-9.15)

(833A.21-9.24)

(842A.26-9.12)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B. The Four Unwholesome Courses of Speech-action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C. The Three Unwholesome Courses of Mind-action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(892a.24-2a.19)
3. The Cause of Unwholesome Course of Action (8936.6-12)
4. Unwholesome Actions and The Three Unwholesome Roots

(89.0c-89.0d.6)

[Text content not legible due to image quality]
### 5. Manifested and Unmanifested Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(894a.6-27)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

＞＞＞ 以上内容仅供参考，请根据具体情况进行调整。
6. Action, Preparation and Result

(894c, 27-8.12)

[Text not legible]
8. Various States and the Wholesome Courses of Action

(846, 92-25)

...
| 9. Volition and the Courses of Action |

| A. Unwholesome Courses of Action |

<p>| (694c.26-895a.12) |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>10. Various Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(8954.29-12)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B. Wholesome Courses of Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(8954.13-29)
未找到内容。
1. Action and the Time of Its Retribution

VI. Various Divisions of Action
2. The Threefold Division of Action

(8950.74-8964.8)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Division</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Theoretical Foundation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Methodological Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Practical Application</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Theoretical Foundation
  - Overview of the threefold division
  - Analysis of theoretical underpinnings

- Methodological Framework
  - Detailed methodology for each division
  - Case studies and examples

- Practical Application
  - Implementation strategies
  - Identified challenges and solutions
3. The Proposal Division of Action

(8964.2-6.10)

(8462.2-3.10)

(8462.3-6.10)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4. The Three False Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5. Mind and Mental States Causing Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8960.4-19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1943.3-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2146.18-24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

...
6. The Three Pure Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>阶段</th>
<th>说明</th>
<th>行动</th>
<th>目标</th>
<th>过程</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>一</td>
<td>无相</td>
<td>无相</td>
<td>无相</td>
<td>无相</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>二</td>
<td>无相</td>
<td>无相</td>
<td>无相</td>
<td>无相</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>三</td>
<td>无相</td>
<td>无相</td>
<td>无相</td>
<td>无相</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(8966.20-8974.17)
1. Five Effects

VII. Action and the Effect

(8974.12-3)
2. Various Effects of Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6976-3-20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Various effects of actions.
- Detailed analysis of effects.
I. The Three Obstacles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(8984.25-0.3)</th>
<th>(8493.9-23)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| (8854.12-22) | (8354.12-22) |

II. The Three Obstacles to Attaining Enlightenment

3. Actions and the Four Great Benevolence
2. The act of destroying the Buddhist community.

(898b.13-18)

(Parallel to the previous page)
3. The Worst Action and the Finest Action

(986.12-992.14)

（815.28-b.5）
TITLE OF THESIS A Study of the Abhidharmahrdaya: The
Historical Development of the Concept of Karma in the
Sarvāstivāda Thought

MAJOR PROFESSOR Minoru Kiyota

MAJOR Buddhist Studies

MINOR South Asian Language and Literature

NAME Wataru S. Ryose

PLACE AND DATE OF BIRTH Nagasaki, Japan, May 24, 1956

COLLEGES AND UNIVERSITIES: YEARS ATTENDED AND DEGREES
Otani University, Kyoto, Japan, 197501981. B.A. (Philosophy)
1979; M.A. (Buddhist Studies) 1981.

University of Wisconsin-Madison, 1982-1987, Ph. D Candidate
(Buddhist Studies) 1984; Passed the Thesis Defense, 7/87

MEMBERSHIPS IN LEARNED OR HONORARY SOCIETIES
International Association for Buddhist Studies (USA)

PUBLICATIONS 'Amerika niokeru bukkyokenkyu no doko' (Japanese),
Shinshu (Kyoto, Japan: Higashi Honganji Temple), September,
1984, pp.80-86; 'Betuge daturitsugi no sha' (Japanese),

I.B.K. (Tokyo, Japan: Tokyo University), Vol.34,
1986, pp.769-771; 'The Position of the Abhidharmahrdaya in
Historical Development of Sarvāstivāda Thought' ARI (Kyoto,

CURRENT DATE 7/20/1987